

THE HISTORIE OF TREBIZOND, In foure Bookes.

By *Tho. Gainsford* Esquier.

Quest. Quid dignum tanto feret hic promissor hiatus?
Resp. Sic inuat indulgere sugacibus horis.



AT LONDON,
Printed for *Tho. Downes* and *Eph. Dawson*.
1616.

Q/2.18, 1923
HARVARD UNIVERSITY
CHILD MEMORIAL LIBRARY



TO
The Right Honora-
ble Countesse Dowager
of DERBIE.

RIGHT HONORABLE;



Xperience maketh Ignorance confesse, that the best composed private Letters resemble the passage of a Shippe, leaving no print or impression of her course : and the memorie of such an improuident and unfortunate Man as my selfe, is like spilt a-broad Water, neuer to be gathered up againe. — But doe what Contempt and Greatnesse can : this shall outlast a Tombe, and be more glorious then the proudest Epitaph or Structure : Not that there is any thing in the same, otherwise then a Spiders Cobwebbe, fitter to be swept away with a huswinely hand : But because your Fame may suruiue thereby, and many ages to come demaund, which Lady of DERBY excited such commemoration? And then the answer shall bee; Earle Ferdinandos Widow, Countesse

THE EPISTLE.

DOWAGER of DERBY; who was thus farre beholding to Nature, that Loue, Beauty, and Comlinesse, exposed her as a worke of her choycest Storehouse: who was so farre beholding to Vertue, that shee united many Graces, as you see a rich Diamond augmented in his lustre by the workmans skilfulnesse: who was so farre beholding to Fortune, that shee sheltered vnder the covert of the greatest and magnificenst Prince in the World *Q.* Elizabeth; and shee so ouermantled her with Faouour, that King Iames kept her still glorious vnder the same: Who was so farre beholding to Prouidence, that from a second Husbands Worthinesse and wisdom, they went arme in arme to the house of Perfection, and made it thrive the better vnder the warme roofof Aboundance: Who was so farre beholding to Honour, that shee affronted the strictnesse of Law, and from his Maisties Warrant kept her greatnesse secure: and who was so farre beholding to Fame, that shee trode vpon the swelling Serpent Enuie, and raysed good wishes from their hearts, who had formerly pretended cause of distasting.

Therefore I can be no contrary amongst so many iudicious observers, but presume, that so great goodnesse will not be diuerted by any maligne circumstances; and assure my selfe, that your Honour may looke toward mee with a gracious aspect, or at least in this triuiall abruptnesse condescend to a charitable endurance of mens imperfections: For Wisdom, or a thriving Fortune is not bought in the Market, and I amongst some others may well complaine, — *Fato prudentia minor.*

Your Honours humble Obseruant,

Th. Gainsforde.

The principall matters and

Stories contained in these Bookes.

Lib. 1.

THE Story of the Shepheards of <i>Nagania.</i>	Page. 4
<i>Marpesias</i> Cause.	13.
<i>Marpesias</i> Story.	15.
The Shepheards Daughters.	18.
The principall Shepheards.	23.
The story of <i>Fransio.</i>	47.
Idlemen described.	48.
The story of <i>Rugio</i> and <i>Deltona.</i>	62.

Lib. 2.

The Historie of <i>Mengrelins</i> and <i>Kabucki.</i>	86.
The History of <i>Xantippus</i> and <i>Encelidon.</i>	104.
The description of <i>Delfos.</i>	116.
The Oracle it selfe, or Prophecie.	124.
How <i>Gelida</i> and <i>Perinthum</i> saued the Emperesse Children.	130.
The story of <i>Praxus</i> and <i>Menedemus.</i>	144.
The story of <i>Cleonidas</i> and <i>Perinthum.</i>	151.

Lib. 3.

The triumph at <i>Deltonas</i> discouery.	172.
The History of <i>Artabazes</i> and <i>Olmus.</i>	180.
The setting of a Gouvernment in a Kingdome.	183.
The story of <i>Gestarius.</i>	193.
The story of <i>Cleonidas</i> and <i>Artabazes.</i>	201.
<i>Anzitemus</i> marieth <i>Brizaca</i> , formerly called <i>Montanus</i> and <i>Deltona.</i>	208.
The story of <i>Artabanus</i> and <i>Afiages.</i>	209.
The story of <i>Medormus</i> and <i>Giranda.</i>	213.
The Combat betweene <i>Anzitemus</i> and <i>Medormus.</i>	221.
The story of <i>Ormisdates</i> and <i>Damasfloris.</i>	233.
The story of <i>Anzitemus</i> and <i>Afiages.</i>	245.

A 4

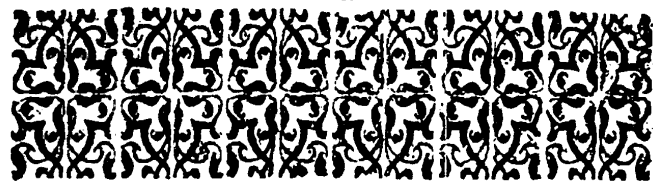
Lib.

The Contents.

Lib. 4.

<i>Anzitemus</i> his owne Storie.	Page. 261.
A King described.	263.
<i>Artabazes</i> Father of <i>Anzitemus</i> , slaine by <i>Cleonidas</i> the Pirat.	269.
The storie of <i>Cleonidas</i> and <i>Artaxata</i> .	275.
The description of a Giants naturall Disposition.	277.
The storie of <i>Sagareus</i> and <i>Artaxata</i> .	280.
<i>Armenia</i> of <i>Armenus</i> .	287.
<i>Raxanas</i> description.	291.
The commendation of Conference.	295.
<i>Anzitemus</i> King of <i>Armenia</i> .	300.
The storie of <i>Trezoboro</i> the Emperours sonne of <i>Trebizond</i> .	303.
<i>Trezoboro</i> returneth to <i>Trebizond</i> .	308.
The story of <i>Kalucki</i> and <i>Mullumalla</i> .	310.
<i>Kalucki</i> Emperour of <i>Tertiary</i> .	313.
<i>Kalucki</i> challengeth <i>Trebizond</i> .	326.
The Battaile betweene <i>Mengrelins</i> & <i>Kalucki</i> : two brothers.	330.
The story of <i>Mengrelins</i> and <i>Trezoboro</i> , father and sonne.	339.
<i>Mengrelins</i> slaine by <i>Anzitemus</i> and <i>Trezoboro</i> Emperour, as in the Prophecie.	345.
The story of <i>Cleonidas</i> after the Battaile at Sea with <i>Anzitemus</i> .	354.
<i>Cleonidas</i> death.	359.

FINIS.



The first Booke of the Historie of TREBIZOND.



O long continued the fight *The Battaile*
betwixt the valiant *Anzi-* *betwixt An-*
temus, and the Arch-pirat *temus* and
Cleonidas, that extremitie *Cleonidas*
wondred to be maintained, at Sea.
and the night (as a common
decider of Controuersies)
hasted for very pittie to de-
termine the furie, not remembring what terroure
her haste would adde vnto the furie: whereupon
Anzitemus enraged to be disappoynted, com-
maunded to grapple, and the taske imposed, chain-
ed their Barkes together: the effect whereof,
produced the lamentable Stratagems, wherewith
Confusion, Slaughter, and Death, terrifieth the
beholders: For the fighters with Swords seemde
to play in the choyse either to deuide the Body

B.

from

Trebizond.

from the Head, or seperate the Members from the Body: Such as vsed Pikes, might either wound or kill; such as throw Stones, either braine, or endanger; & such as trusting to their strength durst cloose, either strangle, or toss euerboard: Thus were some throwne into the Sea, some stifled in the Shippes, some slaine outright, some irrecouerably wounded, some thronged to death, some sprauling halfe dead, & some fainting ouerweai- ed; none escaping one mischiese or other; and all confounded, because they saw all things confused: the saythlesse hearted trembling before death, as dismayed at their fellowes outcries: the yaliant hoping to liue to reuenge their companions wrongs: At last, Destruction lifted vp her horrible countenance, as if shee meant to distract them with this assurance, that neither Pollicie, nor Endeouours could direct to any way of securitie; which when *Anzitemus* (euen betwixt the contraries of Pittie and Rage) apprehended, hee then cryed out: Let all cease, and *Cleonidas* and I determine the controuersie.

But, whether *Cleonidas* despayring in the suc- cesse, stomaked the misfortune, or remembring his fault conceited the reuenge; or impatient at the difficultie, forgate the meanes of redresses or enraging to be ouer-mastered, became abso- lutely desperate: Hee put in practise more feare and more terrour: with his owne hands like a hired Seruant of mischiese setting the Ships on fire,

A desperate
action of Cle-
onidas.

Trebizond.

fire, and commaunding the rest of his partie to heaw them a peece, or otherwise to shift for themselves. This was so well liked of the Mari- ners, and so soone performed, that you would haue imagined, Confusion meant to decipher, with what varietie shee would entertaine Death: For what with Axes, Hat- chets, Sawes, Dragges, Winches, Croes, Engines, and other Instruments, the Shippes were splitted, spoyled, broken, dis- ioynted, and all to peece shiuered: besides, the Fire playing the Tirant, quickly disseuered, what before fastned the maine Beames together; here- in onely acting the part of a Friende by soone, ridding out of the paine, and concluding (seen we, must die) to die with resolution.

Thus were such interdicted with necessitie of sauing themselves, who before strived to inter- cept others: Thus did vncomfortable Cryes condemne the crueltie of Reuenge; which would not be satisfied without so small a massacre: Thus were pittifull yelles the last testimonie; how many hundreds exclaymed on the ambition of men: Thus did horrible Curses sound out the wicked mindes of such, as neglected the true vse of a good Conscience: Thus were all the causes of amazement vnited, to shew the formidable effectes of Enrage & Despight, so that the most part perished, and very few summoned vp new hopes to prolong their liues: Yet had *Anzitemus* this fortune, to light on the hinder quarter of his enemies.

4 Trebizond.

*The Ship-
wracke of
Anzitemus.*

enemies Shippe; and if before affrighted with the hideous spectacle hee stood vncapable of any resolution, now reduced with the enforced conditions of life, he bestirred his consideration to inhibit vnkind and vntimely mischaunce: wherevpon compelled to leaue the ornaments of his valour, because he was to make vse of his armes and lightnesse, he quickly stripped himselfe, and as quickly tooke vp his seate on the broken peece, which resembling some Boigh or Sea marke, was no doubt the occasion he was the better marked. For as the vncomfortable Night finished her progresse, the bountie of a sunshining Morning layde open her treasure, and hee had the choyce of many feuerals; faire Weather, sweete Winde, calme Sea, cleare Ayre; and sighs of a Fisher-boat, which seemed a Messenger of life, in regard it approached so neere, that he was vnderstood in crauing their helpe; and they helped, when they vnderstood what he craued: But to strengthen your knowledge in this accident, you must allow of some circumstance.

*The Florie of
the Shep-
heards of
Nagania.*

After the Earth like a magnificent Bride had apparelled her selfe in her beautilous attyre, the Inhabitants of *Nagania* on the Northren *Caspian* Shore, (betweene whom the melancholy Winter had compelled a discontented seperation) began their solemne Spring feastes, and set forward the herds of Sheepe, Goates, and

Trebizond.

and greater Cattell to the Downes, which were in a manner purged by the gentle ebbings & flowings of the Sea; where both one and other seemed to make vse of a pleasing theft, pleasing to the Beastes in finding so good a pray as the sweete Grasse afforded; pleasing to the Earth, in being ordained an instrument of such reliefe; the effect whereof produced, that Riches without Enuie, Good order without Flatterie, Quietnesse without Imperfection, Peace without Intemperance, Plenty without Inordinatnesse, Encrease without Repining, and all other bleisings of the Land, as it were in one league combined them selues: Besides, the Sea disbursed a recompence to their industry, which caused them to maintaine certaine Boates to fish with, and euery one according to a well applauded custome watched his course: amongst these *Placandus* (whom yeeres & grauitie had much graced) liued with such loue and liking, that whensoever his iourney importuned, some one or other attended the worke in hand, and at this instant bare him company in his fishing night: so that by Art vnited to industrie (the onely enemies of idlenesse) their nets were filled with great store, and their Trunks stored with excellent Fish, the dispatch whereof (as vnwilling to tempt prosperitie with an vnecessary iourney) concluded a returne, had not a sudden cry directed their pittie to regard what they heard, and that detained them to consider, how they might administer

B 3 reliefe,

6 Trebizond.

reliefe, the rather because a man appeared sitting on a broken piece of a Shippe, neither much dismayed at so great an enemy as death, nor now seeming ouer ielous for so sweete a friend as Life: But such as hee was, did their industry asist, their assistance helpe, their helpe recover, their recovery welcome to Comfort: now when Comfort came to act her part, like the Sunne, who scorning to be checked with euery slender Vapour, quickly listeth vp his glorious head: Feare and palenesse was made ashamed of their wrong disfeiture, and he seemed the very Sonne of Valoure, and darling of loue.

This at the first, rayfed a kind of reuerence; wherein they would more orderly haue proceeded, had not a pleasing vtterance pacified their importunities to vnderstande, who hee might be with his earnest desire to take him as hee was, which (sayth hee) I cannot but presume on, because I finde such a vnitie of goodnesse: Bee therefore satisfied, that my simple truth telleth you, I am *Montanus* of *Carberia*, vnfortunate in being that I am; and ten times vnfortunate in remembering what I was: meane I confesse, but now the meaner by loosing all meanes of my estate and liuing, as hauing with some substance and friends not eightene dayes since burdoned one small Barke, and after some varietie of Stormes within these eightene howers tasted the very bitterness of aduersitie, which many with the meditation

*Exitemus
sawed by Placandus
candus char.
geth his name
to Montanus*

7 Trebizond.

tation put me in minde of some misfortune: But thinges remediable, are past care and cure; therefore I will teach my tongue to forget her owne language, and ouermaster Misery with an ill respected Vertue called Patience.

But *Placandus* tooke an other course, and from troubling him with any more questions, applyed the ordynary meanes of helpe in such cases, telling that they were men of Husbandrie and Cattle in the Kingdome of *Nagania*, and not Fishers; if then their supplyes could stand him in stead, or estates induce him to be one of the companie, hee might be sure neither to fayle of succour, nor complaine for want: and if my selfe seeme not lesse worthy then another, I will welcome thee, and vpon good deseruing, adde to thy welcome, a reward,

By this time, had *Montanus* youth shewed a scorne of the mischief, which the Seas vnmmercifulnesse pretended, and hee remained in some extasie, remembering his owne assayres, but especially, that in so remote a place, hee must represent the fruite of a foraine Land, which the Inhabitants haue no other vse of, but wondring at: Yet hoping to spende out the extremitie of sullen conceits with this varietie, and perceiving the rest as it were to stomacke his slacknesse, that apprehended no sooner the curtesie propoled, he presently opened the treasure of the poore, thanked all in generall, and gratified *Placandus* in

8 Trebizond.

in particular, accepting the kindnesse with many wishes, that his honest endeouours might draw on successe to confirme him a dutifull seruant.

Thus they returned with effectuall dispatch of their iorney, and extraordinary newes of this aduenture, which ouer a day or two, was willing to participate it selfe to the rest: Yet not in so slender a manner, but euery one amplified report, as their opinions receiued impression, some praised his Feature, some his Countenance, some his vpright Comelineesse, some his well knit Ioynts, some his Demeanour, and some his Constancie in the affliction; nor wanted there others, which supposed him of better fortune, then his present shew portraited, so that for the time, *Placandus* house was neuer empty; many comming to see him, many to prayse him, many to iudge of their prayles, many not to be beholding to anothers report, many to giue notice, how well they had profited in the Schoole of Ciuilitie, and many to performe Goodnesse, because Vertue delighteth in action: Amongst this number, *Coranus* though the last, which came, yet was not the least meanes of his comfort, because hauing him selfe experienced distresse, he could, how counsell and reliefe might be seasonably confirmed, and heere, like the discrette Phisition, knowing the state of his Patients body, reduced him to some moderations: so that their humanity, and *Placandus* good vsage, made *Montanus* belecue, he was ordayned

*Montanus
as Placandus
seruant
saluted by
Coranus.*

to

9 Trebizond.

to this quietnesse: For with a kind of delight he put in practise willingnes, and exercise the ouermasters of difficulties, which vnder propped his knowledge with these particulars, how to pasture the Cattle before the Sunnes pride might preuent theyr stomackes, how to guide them ere the Eucning had determined theyr rest; when to water, and where to refresh them; when to driue them to the Fold, when to retyre from the Field; and in what sort to vse the instruments of commaunde his voyce and Pipe, all which were done with so good agrace, that the beholders woondered at the action, and he mused how necessity had so soone acquainted the action: they louing, his Maister liking; and hee satisfied to be thus loued and liked.

BY this time, Fame was not so nigardly, but the women as wel as men (to whom in deed curiosity seemed more proper) entertained the newes, & had not a customarie modesty restrained their desires, they would sooner haue satiated their longing then they did; yet because their Sommer Feast approched, in which many meetings, & ancient ceremonies had their seuerall passages, their forward desire was a little suppressed, and the feastiuall approched to put them in remembrance, that Time had strengthened their encreases, and this Stranger expected the setting them selfes foorth to best becomming:

*Coranus not
onely relateth
the story of
Montanus,
but describeth
him to his
daughter
Deltana.*

C

In

Trebizond.

*Coranus describes
Montanus
to Deltona.*

In the meane while, *Coranus* returning home, told his Daughter *Deltona* (for the Man was winlesse, and a stranger amongst them) of *Montanus* ari- uall with amplification of the circumstances be- longing to his shipwracke, which because it agreed to their fortune, shee was willing to heare, and hee readie to dilate. Truly (quoth hee) I neuer saw a man of a better presence, his stature comely and tall, yet not exceeding mediocritie; his mem- bers so framed, as if our first Mother looking backe on the worke, had like a skilfull statuarie new polished, what shee escaped; his Shoulders large, and Body vpriight; of mighty Bone, and not ouermuch Flesh; the Necke in equality of length made to support a well proportioned Head; and an amiable, yet stately Countenance, which like some faire Planet in a frostie night, by speciall marks doth warrant him of Noble birth: For the Tresses spaciouly plighted seeme to boast of extraordinarie curiousnesse, and the Tyara sumptuously fashioned, to propose vnto vs a very certainty of wealth: his Eyes according to the course they intende, louely, compelled to distemperature fearefull, & enclining to sadnesse, very Adamants of Compassion: to be plaine, hee may be what our greatest thoughts can compre- hend; but as he is, we repute him *Placandus* ser- uant by name of *Montanus*.

Deltona could not but like her Fathers descrip- tion, and allow of his opinion; yet was not satis- fied,

Trebizond.

fied because shee had not seene him; and wished to see him, that she might be satisfied: wondring how her desire tooke vpon it such a libertie, and halfe ashamed, least her Father might per- ceiue her minde distempred, but hee poore man, had a world of conceites to thinke of: for though hee looked on her with a kind of demurenesse, yet was it to ouerlook her, least shee might haue discovered his sighing and teares; which to pre- uent he cunningly led her foorth into a larger feeld of other conference; and so they remained with a reciprocall gladnesse not to be seene per- plexed.

Now the Feast comming forward, *Placandus* much moued with the desert of his new Seruant, and as it were enriched with the care he had ouer his charge, and the prosperitie following his care, thought to gratifie him with a thing of some worth, and therefore one Euening by way of rela- tion, hee told the Storie how his Wife, his louing Wife, his louing loued Wife *Iapeta*, miscarrying long since in child-birth, left him a fatherlesse, and a sorrowfull Widower, which for the time had such impressiõ, that for feare to be so againe called to the account of passion, he vowed in *Marpesias* Caue, he would neuer marry; and although I haue found it a matter almost of impossibilitie to tie our frayltie to such strict rules: yet my ho- nest *Montanus*, I haue waded through the diffi- cultie, and I hope reserued my selfe to some good purpose.

Trebizond.

*Placandus
adopteth
Montanus
his sonne,*

purpose : For laying open the Records of thy desert, I cannot but studie to make satisfaction, and by way of requitall doe adopt thee my Sonne. With that he ran ouer the discourse of their meetings, ancient ceremonies, the deuice of their dances, the solemnitie of their sittings, wrafflings, pastimes, hollidayes, and willed him to remember his now aduancement accordingly.

But when Report had not spared to publish the newes, euery one reioyced to see Vertue ballanced with Equity and Recompence; onely this happened as a most strange allowance of Fortune, that amongst so many humoristes, no enuious eye overlooked him, or at least made any outward remonstrance of repining; which appeared in the loue borne before, and the attendance at the time appoynted: For ere the Morning (wherein their long expectation was to be satisfied with the dayes pleasure) had fully let out the Sunne out of his lodging: To *Placandus* as president of the married, did the chiefeſt ſolemnly bid God-morrow. *Montanus* as *Placandus* Sonne conducted the Youth: *Lemprana* a Widdow directed the Wiues; *Deltona* *Coranus* Daughter inuited the Virgins; and thus suffered this assembly a fourefold diuision, making their proceſſion with instruments of Musick round about the Downes, and altogether ſinging a paſtorall to the honour of the Sunne; which finiſhed, they preſented their Offerories at *Marpesias* *Cauc*.

This

Trebizond.

This *Cauc* ſtood in a Rocke within a mile of *The deſcription of the Sea*, and not ſiue from the great Towne *Fer-tion of Mar- tona*, the entrance graſſified with the ſhadow of *peſius* *Cauc*. two large Pines, the mouth ſomewhat more vp-right, reſembled a well proportioned Hemisphere; the couering was poliſhed by art to counterfeite a rough Marble, the foundation by Nature was paued with ſtained Pibbles, with a delicate current of Water after the entercourſe of people did cleaſe, and by induſtry as it were plighted with wel coloured Sedges, from which the Seas moiſture was carefully dried: the firſt Roome did welcome thee with a ſpacious roundneſſe, not much beautified with furniture or coſtlines, onely diuers Seats were heawne to ſome forme, as if meditation deſired reſt, and not vanitie: Next, a narrow ſtragling Entry gaue thee cauſe of woonder rather then delight; and laſt of all, a ſquare Roome quadrated with diuers Statuas wrought out of the pureſt Allablatter inuited thee to the ſecrets of the place, and added commendation to the workemen, who demeaned them ſelues ſo well, as if heretofore they conuerſed with the *Siluan* *Nymphes*: For they made the Fecte vnſhod, and yet not altogether vncovered; the Armes all naked, but that certaine Garlands like a bendy partition ſhadowed ſome part of the outwarde accident, their Garmentes a looſe kinde of Mantell comming Scarfewiſe vnder the right Arme, and made faſt on the left Shoulder,

C 3.

the

Trebizond.

the Haire vntyed without curiositie, but that the hanging downe seemed a curiosnesse, hung downe with sufficient comelinesse, their Loynes were loosely girt with a kind of Belt, which at pleasure made the neither part of their Mantell resemble a full blowne double Rose; their Countenances were amiable, youthfull, rather smiling then sad, and bending to another, respected none but them selues; the Head was decked with a Coronet of Flowers, as if they meant to tell vs, Vertue compelleth Honour as well as commendation, and the whole portrature so well graced, that a man could not but afford a reuerence. In the midst of this roome was a square Table seruing to many purposes, as contracts of Mariages, the parties enterchangably embracing ouerthwart, then kissing, then with a settled countenance laying one hand vpon another, swearing an inuiolable League; Bargaines and exchanging dispatched, both buyer and seller promising no more, then they meant to performe, and performing no lesse then they presumed to promise; offerings of their encreases presented, which euer returned with advantage; according to the willingnes of the partie and the honestie of the giuer: sacrifices for pacification fulfilled, as their consciences layed open transgression, or their desires meditated Religion, knowing the Gods were to be adored, and their neighbours to be beloued, The *Anchress* was extracted from the

Trebizond.

the blood of *Promethews*, whom they superstitiously beleueed a great God, and once had his residence on Mount *Caucasus*, and so began a Familie amongst them: shee euer liued vnmarried, and had fixe seruant Maides likewise to attend her her reputation was the greater, because she neuer fed the people with vnatruths, nor exacted from them more, then their owne willingnes extended vnto: the inward Roome she kept shut, and yet stood open, while anyes businesse imported it, because the next commer might haue warning the place was supplied: but why the name of *Marpesia* received estimation amongst them, you must bee thus aduised.

IN the mightie Kingdome of *Scythia*, at such *The Story of* time, as the first *Amazons*, women of Heroicall *Marpesia*, courage, gloried to make themselves instruments of vertue; reigned as Queen the excellent *Laciama*: a woman of great Industrie, & greater successe in her Industrie: for much affecting the magnanimity of *Telmilanda*, against the *Tartarian Mulmashag*, she fortunatly determined diuers famous exploits, and after gouerned the countreyes with such maiestie and wisdom, that other Kingdomes feared her displeasure, with louing her vertue; and her owne subjects had the practise of singular discipline, which so much the more grew beneficiall, by how much the imployment tended to their good: of her proceeded *Deiaphaba*, and from her the

the faire *Poligambis*, vnder whom an enuious anger, that women should so raise the Trophies of Honor, excited the adioyning Kingdoms to conspire their destruction, and Fortune neuer constant but in vnconstancies, permitted a wicked Furie to massacre the wonderfullnesse of nature: wherein, though the large circumstances, and the strangenesse of the Action keepeth my tongue from her full discourse; yet this must I discouer, that the course of time disappointed their ambition, and dissolued this imparadised company: onely *Marpesia* sister to *Poligambis*, as it were allotted from the beginning to some deuinesse retyred hither, and erected another Regiment, but of different qualitie: For though shee grewe in fauour so Beautifull, and in Beauty so Celestiall, that the greatest Princes deuoted their endeouours to her acceptation: yet shee proclaimed against vanitie defiance, and *Cupid* stormed to bee so counter-checked: this made her abandon all Courtly fashions, least deceitfull temptration might at aduantage entrappe her weaknesse, and heere repose herselfe in a solitarie Groue, that a quiet dispensation from the company of men, might settle obedience to vndefiled thoughts. But some Writers haue iustified, how the desire of reuenge so exasperated her anger, that ere three yeeres had resettled the Company, and drawne backe againe her dispersed Forces, shee returned with a newe Alarum, and prosecuted her attempts with sufficient successe; leaving

leauing the example of her glory to animate *Lampedo* to maintaine this second industrie, shee prospering induced *Antiopa*, from her proceeded *Penthisilia* the mother of the gallant *Thalestris*, and the last *Marpesia*: with whose renowne other Kings offended, Enuie neuer desisted, vntill they shrunke indeed vnder destruction. Howsoeuer, the reziance of the former *Marpesia* gaue name to this place, and occasioned these Ceremonies: so that after a ciuill consideration had acquainted the people with husbandry and tillage: in the felling and stocking vp the wood was this Caue found, for the wonderfullnesse religiously preserved, and the conueniencie in manner aforelaid regarded: and now beginneth our Festiuall.

After they had sacrificed at the Caue, the Custome allowed *Montanus* with his Battelliers to deuide themselves amongst the Virgines, as Fancy led opinion the way to iudgement: but who had seen the louely *Deltona* coming forward, must needs haue remembred, that *Diana* with her Nymphes added something to *Natutes* allowance, when she was to entertaine so great a Lady, and *Iupiter* determined the Rape of *Calisto*: for whether the behauiour of this Stranger taught expectation the practise of other things, or whether time had ripened their estates, that they began to take benefit of their wealth; or whether their own conceits meant to make much

The Shepherds feast, wherein Montanus and Deltona meet.

Trebizond.

of the blessings of Nature, as not willing to continue in a barren rudenesse; or whether the acquaintance with ciuill Cities induced them to imitation, I dispute not, but the fortune of this day was such, that euery one in a manner sequestred from the common basenesse of *Tartary*, detayned the lookers on with the seuerall presentation of beautie and comelinesse.

The description of the shepherds daughters.

Next to *Deltona* came *Grolaca* old *Silenus* Daughter, who manifested she was begotten in a time of discretion by attyring her Head after the plainest fashion, and because no deuise obscured any imperfection, she might the better haue satisfied a iudicious Censurer, had not the neere approach of a prying looke marked the equalitie of her forehead tending to a little flatnesse.

The second was *Enferia* very ill placed, so neere the formost; her attire seemed rather fantastick then costly, and added this to suspicion, that shee determined some strange course of life, because her beautie was adulterate.

The third was *Hiale*, pleasant *Parasloe* daughter, who might well haue brought liking with admiration on her side; but that a little smiling, somewhat more then cheerefulnessse (as if mirth determined not to goe out of a generation) cal'd her modestie in question, and ouer-wrought the ornament of her face, the mouth.

The fourth was *Niphe*, from whom some quarter of a yeere before, Deaths Harrold summoned both.

Trebizond.

both Father and Mother; who amased the beholders with the appearance of liuely colours naturally embelishing her cheekes, onely a dead eye accused her of fullennesse: yet it might be former remembrance admitted the vnkinde ghest sorrow, and limited commendation from ouer-reaching too faite.

Now marched *Ladra* Daughter to *Argias*, (to whom for his excellencie in Musick, they had giuen a Pension) and was quickly scene: For hauing her Haire large, long, and of a singular amber; she ware it in a kinde of loosnesse; but so kindly, that it seemed an excellent rarenesse: because shee was faire and vpriight; yet kept pale Lippes, the full life of beautie aside.

Then presented her selfe *Carista* lusty *Darpanos* Daughter, who of purpose to shew varietie, or vnwilling to patrizare being a Maide merited a choyce commendation, had not a kind of sobrietic made her strangenesse reputed a littell pride, whereby a liuelinesse wanted to set foorth her worth to the best becomming.

The seuenth was *Gralle* *Temellus* onely Child, in whom the best cunning might be deceiued, because, though now a fauourable countenance seemed dimmed with ouermuch Blood, yet impu-ting it to a kind of blushing, or allowing time the effect of moderation, without doubt she was an amiable president of delight: so that *Enny* added not this as an other fault, her speech was ouer loude.

Trebizond.

The eight was *Ranata*, whose cost questionlesse exceeded her fortune; in regard, that beside a well proportioned Body, the face could boast of no great Beautie, and wanted many parts to make it fauourable.

Now approached *Tarina* rich *Pleios* Daughter, who made demonstration of her Fathers Wealth; by her owne statelinessse, yet in so good an order, that it seemed a prerogatiue, and had not a seuerer Censor exprobrated Nature for not allowing so sweete an aspect a perfect clearnesse, to all others it either appeared no defect, or appearing durst not so be counted, considering her owne countenance better marked, dispelled the former conceit, and made a new impression applaud all deserved worthinesse.

Next her came *Carix* blacke *Alcastoes* Daughter, whose Haire inclining to a more then brownnesse, added that bie name: yet was she full of fauour, which seemed attractive as ioyned to a sober demeanor; so thou couldest not choose, but repine at Nature for vnitng two contraries together, because the choysest louer was astonished, when that nakednesse (which modesty allowed to be seene) surpassed the rest for delicacie and coloure.

The 11. was called the strange *Daplana*, who hauing no good part exactly lookt vpon, possessed yet euery part without exception; because her sweete cariage and delicate behaviour strooke an

amaze.

Trebizond.

amazement, ere you could examine the particulars.

The last of especiall note, was *Sabetha*, and in outward shew the least; but such a least, as shined like a sparcke of Pleasure: for the Eyes were able to enflame, the Countenance to enamoure, and her selfe so well fashioned to rauish: so that if a man would haue wished to be the beholder of a delicate creature, the outward shew warranted, and the inward perfection confirmed her the same.

But to returne to *Deltona*, like a braue pointed Diamonde triumphing ouer a border of prety ones, not altogether so well foiled, shee warranted her Liuey to be suted out of the Court of Perfection, and with all vnited a magnificent portlinesse; that *Montanus* imagined strange things, and suspected himselfe surprized with the imagination, as though he durst haue sworne, shee deserved farre better then a simple Cottage: yet allowing as a Stranger the iudgement of so many, that rooke her for *Coranus* daughter, he quieted his thoughts, because the businesse in hand disappointed Meditation, had not the businesse disquieted him with Meditation. For hee was to salute, entertaine, welcome them, and to place them at the Table, which according to their olde Customes (least error might breed repining in wronging one another) hee orderly performed: but taking *Deltona* by the hand, as if Loue and Fortune had vsed

D 3.

some

Trebizond.

The eight was *Ranata*, whose cost questionlesse exceeded her fortune; in regard, that beside a well proportioned Body, the face could boast of no great Beautie, and wanted many parts to make it fauourable.

Now approached *Tarina* rich *Pleios* Daughter, who made demonstration of her Fathers Wealth, by her owne statelinesse, yet in so good an order, that it seemed a prerogatiue, and had not a seuerer Censor exprobrated Nature for not allowing so sweete an aspect a perfect clearenesse, to all others it either appeared no defect, or appearing durst not so be counted, considering her owne countenance better marked, dispelled the former conceit, and made a new impression applaud all deserved worthinesse.

Next her came *Carix* blacke *Alcastes* Daughter, whose Haire inclining to a more then brownnesse, added that bie name: yet was she full of fauour, which seemed attractive as ioyned to a sober demeanour; so thou couldest not choose, but repine at Nature for vniting two contraries together, because the choysest louer was astonished, when that nakednesse (which modesty allowed to be seene) surpassed the rest for delicacie and colour.

The 11. was called the strange *Daplana*, who hauing no good part exactly lookt vpon, possessed yet euery part without exception; because her sweete cariage and delicate behaviour strooke an
amaze.

Trebizond.

amazement, ere you could examine the particulars.

The last of especiall note, was *Sabelha*, and in outward shew the least; but such a least, as shined like a sparcke of Pleasure: for the Eyes were able to enflame, the Countenance to enamoure, and her selfe so well fashioned to rauish: so that if a man would haue wished to be the beholder of a delicate creature, the outward shew warranted, and the inward perfection confirmed her the same.

But to returne to *Deltona*, like a braue pointed Diamonde triumphing ouer a border of prety ones, not altogether so well foiled, shee warranted her Liuey to be fired out of the Court of Perfection, and with all vnited a magnificent portlinesse; that *Montanus* imagined strange things, and suspected himselfe surprized with the imagination, as though he durst haue sworne, shee deserved farre better then a simple Cottage: yet allowing as a Stranger the iudgement of so many, that rooke her for *Coranus* daughter, he quieted his thoughts, because the businesse in hand disappointed Meditation, had not the businesse disquieted him with Meditation. For hee was to salute, entertaine, welcome them, and to place them at the Table, which according to their olde Customes (least error might breed repining in wronging one another) hee orderly performed: but taking *Deltona* by the hand, as if Loue and Fortune had vsed

Trebizond.

some conference about it, he made her his owne obiect.

By this time it was a world to see, how a little strangeness can alter the whole companie: For the vpper Table consisting of the better, and elder sort-weeried *Placandus* with many questions, and in a manner seemed emulous against the other for hauing *Montanus* amongst them: They againe reioyced in his presence, and were soone induced to allow him some preeminence, and truly howsoeuer he liked their fashions, or fashioned himselfe to their liking, or was now settled in the aduantage of his owne amiable and portly countenance, hee seemed, as if a good Husbando had preserved a stately Cedar in a conuenient Grove of smaller Trees, whereby hee might boast of one surpassing all the rest: but doe not suppose hee was so generally regarded of them, as particularly noted by *Deltona*, who could not so moderate her neerensse, but shee must eye him at the full, and when it seemed a pleasing thing to behold, she tooke the occasion of beholding him to be pleased: then she attempted to refraine, little knowing the restraint, made her next looking passionate: yet excused by the curtesie to Strangers, she againe emboldned her selfe to looke, and to speake, both performed with such Loue-insuffing sweetness, that *Montanus* protested maistie was betrayed to the meanest deiection. For how could so great beautie seeme kinde, but hee must

Trebizond.

must be friendly? How could shee demaund, but he must answer? How could she view him, but he must review her? How could shee craue, but he must allow it? How could shee execute any thing, but he must be pleased? Insomuch that this first acquaintance warranted delight in the highest manner, and soothed their desires to with the continuance; yet those wishes were not ready to admit any stedfastnesse, because *Montanus* was to forward the Dances, which for the first day concluded the pastimes, wherein no sooner settled he himselfe to the measure with *Deltona*, but as if a soft Easterly winde had with a sudden strength stirred the thicke leaued trees, a certaine wispering of the company from mutuall eying them proceeded to liking; from liking to affecting; from affecting to praysing; from praysing to wishing them some good; and debating wherein, confirmed it by marriage: the rather because they had demeaned themselves so well before, and seemed now futable in a Liuerie of preeminence: but other Coples presented occasion of new speech: yet *Montanus* stil in sight was stil remembered, as busied in ording the next commers out to the Dances.

Here then was deciphered sober *Eugenio*, who by the outward countance assured, his care was greater to encrease his wealth, then his pleasure.

Louely *Miletus* a man still practising of good as one, which knew no bad.

Rich

The description of the shepherds.

Trebizond.

Rich *Polio*, whose abilitie outcountenanced imperfections, which without doubt would else in pouertie not without scandall haue appeared, besides hee published this error, that counting Vertue but the passage of breath, hee esteemed Money before a Friend.

Rude *Sciscus*, who in an ill accomplished pride, shewed rather a willingnesse to the vice, then was fashioned to any Grace or good Manner.

Vnfortunate *Pleistos*, whose Fancie was euer haunted with a counter-changeable crossnesse, as a man playing with his Shadow running from that, which followed him, and prosecuting, what seemed to fly from him.

Quiet *Dromos*, who yet was abused for his opinion of conscience, and a slacknesse to reueng euery disgrace, gaue suspicion of cowardice.

Pewish *Derion*, who careless either of Order, or good Manner belonging to education, manifested a very scorne of behauiour, and harsh extremitie of humours.

Modest *Ergastus*, as one speaking little, but meditating the more, loth to giue occasion of offence, and vnwilling to remaine sullen.

Froward *Romero*, who indeed hauing a naturall gift of vtterance was not tongue-tyed, as supposing his speech to be still pleasing.

Stubborne *Bustosa* who had no good qualitie, but plainenesse.

Pleasant *Tedanus*, who graced with many qualities,

Trebizond.

ities was as gracious to seuerall Companies.

Sturdie *Philaastro*, who thought well of himselfe, because he was able to match his hardest illwiller.

Besides that did not dance, *Enuious Franio*, who was not onely ill in himselfe, but compassed to make all others like himselfe.

THESE prooued their Actions to bee the seruants of time, and with making their Procession once againe about the Pastures, that dayes iollitie was ended, so they thought it couenient to depart, which without further curiofitie they would haue done, had not *Montanus* by taking leaue of *Deltona*, giuen notice to the rest, that some Ceremonie of good obseruation, addeth a grace to each Action. But depart they must, and depart they did, which being no longer then the next Morning: The next Morning they thought it ouer-long, vntill the swiftnesse of their footeman-shippe gaue the Reward to the best deseruer.

BVt when *Montanus* saw *Deltona* holde the Garland, at the vpper end of the Lists, which he quickly did, because the place and her selfe were of specialtie; or els Loue (if hee durst haue so perswaded himselfe) is quicke sighted, he stood amazed, almost neglecting what hee had in hand: yet lest the company might ouer-looke his distemperature, or that his owne disposition still desired, what

E.

was

The continuance of the Feast, with the Exercises of the shepherds.

The second meeting of Montanus and Deltona

Trebizond.

was excellent; or ielious, that any other should watch *Deltona* with the like regards; or emulous to hazzard his credit by being ouer-mastered, hee gallantly set forward; and was indeede so forward, that while the rest repined at Fortune to suffer a Stranger to glory in their disgrace, he had time to tell her, that her matchlesse beauty was attractiue, and had added wings to his willingness; with that shee gaue him the Garland to weare, and forgaue him a kisse which hee stole: Now? Whether kisses produce strange Effects? Or some naturall secret was infused with the new breath? he remained distracted, and seemed more pleased with the theft, then the sonne of *Maia*, when he had beguiled the euer-waking eyes of *Argus*: but the Company comming forward deuoided his desire, and ouer-wrought his countenance by bestowing liberall prayses on his desert.

Thus did a second meeting encrease more vertue, and liking. For many qualities in one man, helpe forward to excellencie; and diuers inter-viewes in well-willing parties, conclude affection: which (to bee plaine) prooued heere in short time a strange deuise of Fortune, but wee are not yet ready for such contentment, because the third dayes Exercise, which was Wrastring (*Placandus*, *Silennus*, and *Argias* Iudges) presented it selfe with an excellent temperature. Imagine yet *Montanus* was not so hasty, but he looked vp to the Mount to see *Deltona*, who soone apprehended the motion,

Trebizond.

tion, and looked too; by which he supposed shee bad him to remember himselfe, as if the secret of his defaister had been discovered: In this seruencie he stepped forth vncalled, neuer seeming angry till now; nor to be feared, till hee was angry, and then were all commers ouer-throwne: what he yet did, proceeded rather from a necessary vertue, then a vaine ostentation, vlesse it were in the contention with *Franko*, whom for ill looks and base manner of Play, valour scorned, so that adding a little violence to disdaine, the fall brake his arme; no man so sorry for his hurt, as glad of *Montanus* estimation, which by a generall Plaudite, and theyeelding vp the Prizes, gaue him testimonie of regard.

NOW the Custome shadowed the secrets of passion, if perhaps there happened a mutual liking of Parties: For it was an honour to the preuailer, if he bestowed the Prize (which was a Watchet Scarffe of curl'd Cypers, embrodered ouer with Starres of gold) on any worthy subiect: Whereupon *Montanus* with a wanton pleasantnesse, much gracing his demeanour, presented the same to *Deltona*; who tooke it, but in such a manner, that shee knewe not, whether the gift, or the handsomnesse in the deliuerie pleased more, besides: her sudden blushing matched to contraries together, feare & gladnesse. But heere ended their Pastimes, which according

The third meeting of Montanus and Deltona.

Trebizond.

cording to the true nature of pleasure, least a continuall satiating should rather glut then delight, did they vse with sparingnesse: so that euery one applied their seuerall affaires, no man imagining any ill, and therefore not practising; no man practising, because they were enemies to dishonestie; no man dishonest, for friendship helpeth vp and downe the burdens of the weake, and leaueth no fault vnexcused. Else you must thinke, heere were such, as did loue, could hurt, might mallice, durst controll, and knew to reuenge; all which were afterward put in execution, when folly and impietie entred the breach against goodnesse. But the time importuned their care ouer their estates, which consisting in the prosperity of their cattle compelled a generall retyring to their Heards & Flocks.

*Montanus
in loue with
Deltona.*

NOW; what was this retyring, but a very tyting of *Montanus*, in whose conceit Fancy already had made Impression? For though the outward shew discovered no distemperature, yet the wit much out of frame, strived to restraine it self from any base scope: and whether other company put him in minde of the absence of *Deltona*? Or that the nature of absence bred a greater desire to possesse the thing vnobtained, he suddenly began to be angry with himselfe for suffering her departure, and encreased his anger with despaire of her returne; but giuing that stoppe a dash with an heroicall presumption, that nothing

Trebizond.

nothing was impossible, 'it somewhat seled him in the hope of a new meeting: at last he began a strict examination, why his minde should so run on *Deltona*; his sleepes in broken dreames of *Deltona*; his dreames, that hee meeteth *Deltona*; his waking fancie recounting the worth of *Deltona*; stedfastly supposing a shepheards daughter could not be *Deltona*? But the more hee meditated, the sooner he receiued a foile, for lacke of resolution, so that by this time the want of the thing longed for was not so great, as the meanes to obtaine it dangerous: his feare, mistrusting the practises hee meant to set on worke, and his desire importuning some satisfaction: this willed him to repaire to solitarinesse, where hee quickly ranne ouer the rugged Fieldes of disquiet; sometime condemning fondnesse and folly for conforthing together, then exclaiming on his owne weakenesse, for yeelding to such degenerate companions: other-while hee met with consideration, that man was subiect to many inconueniences; anon he encountered with patience, a strange vertue to pull on heauier burdens; sometime hee vpbayded his penitnesse for his submission, after the Battle with *Leonidas*; and by & by, he protested to abiure both the place and the companie: But this seeming a counterfeit stoutnesse (as if hee had offended by such imagination) set him forth to the recourse of his friends; but alas, their Welcome prooued like a mysterious Banquet,

Trebizond.

wherein mischief counterfeiteth to betray a man, and sounded in his eares, they were the enemies of Reposednesse; whereupon hee practised againe to be alone, had not so many by wayes of Fancie confounded him, that hee durst not abide the fearefulnesse of being alone. Thus euery thing framed the vnframing of his health, and brought him at last to the vnkind acquaintance of a Feuer, whereby he wanted orderly rest, and naturall diet, the soule bearing the body company in tollering many changeable inflictions, as it had yeelded to a sence-weakening violence; sometime leaning the head against a firmenesse, as if he meant to settle his Braines: otherwile the Armes crossed with strength, resembled two strong Barres; which bound in the Heart from flying out of her inclosure: Sometimes his Feete stood him in stead to pace out his griefe: anone a Pallet seemed proude of the ease it afforded: presently the Ground was his resting place, and at last by his vnrest, hee could abide in no place; which when the good old *Placandus* had discovered, the care and opinion, which he conceiued of his new adopted Sonne, made him pittie his distresse, and put in execution his pittie.

My Sonne (quoth hee) doubt not to vnlocke the treasure of thy thoughts to mee: For as I haue respected thy desert, and loued thee with the same respect; so hath my loue ouerwatched thy griefe, and that loue made me partaker of the sor-

row:

Trebizond.

row: Bee therefore perfect in thy former Wisedome, and thinke there is a remedie to each defecter; by my Zeale, and thy owne Vertue I therefore coniure thee, let mee know the occasion, whereby thou hast admitted this discontentment, and welcommed so vnkind guesstes as Griefe, and Disquiet. Looke how a man hearing the sound of some sweete harmonie, and vnwilling to deceiue his sence of the pleasure, biddeth a silence; so stood our passionate *Montanus*, while *Placandus* had thus broken the enclosure of his fullennesse: and finding Silence a tyrant maintaining this faction of distemperature against him, he thus replied. O Father, this childishnesse, folly, and negligence, is worthy reprehension! yet pardon my vnwillingnesse either to be childish, foolish, or negligent? And this I doe protest, vnlesse some secret influence had ouer-wrought my spirits, no peeuish Humour could haue thus mastred mee. For to be plaine; I like *Deltona*, I loue *Deltona*; yea and liue in the loue and liking of *Deltona*: But suppose not? this breuitie marcheth with the same lightnesse. For a world of secrets depend on my speaches; yet my tongue hath now mitigated the burdensome paine of my heart, which otherwile like a well stopped Oven, had increased the burning heate for lacke of vent.

When *Placandus* heard the name of *Deltona* pronounced, you might haue compared him to a man meeting an Adder in an vnbeaten path, and

Trebizond.

and starteth for feare, as if indeed the worne had mischieued him, so gaue hee a sudden motion prognosticating further mishap: Oh (saith hee) what doth *Montanus* attempt? I thinke she hath vowed her selfe to scorne, and proclaimed defiance against Fancie: Else would she neuer haue checked Fortune in her full flight of happinesse toward her? For *Rugeo* Duke of *Fortona* tempted her constancie, and attempted to perswade a more glorious alteration: but she to all our amazements denied the honour, and ouer-prised this quietnes beyond Courtly vanitie: yet (*my Sonne*) because Loue and deuine appointment hath some secret in store, I wish thee not despaire; but vse my credit, and thine owne desert to hold the beame, wherein Loue weigheth the fancies of women: onely as a Caueat, beware of *Francie*; for besides the generall ill conditions wherewith he is infected; I heare he whispereth, yea murmureth against thee, which proceeding from malice hath this propertie, neuer to desist, till with aduantage it prooue infectious. Farre bee it from my obedience answered *Montanus*, not to make vse of your aduice and encouragement, I will therefore by the great eye of heauen, goe to morrow to *Coranus* howse, a day wherein as the world agreed to yeeld me life, so may *Cupid* assent to afford mee ioy to my life; but while he prepareth for his iourney, let vs see how *Deltona* is willing to admit him.

After

Trebizond.

After the Feastivals had end, *Coranus* with his Daughter returned home, who poore soule ^{*Deltona in*} ^{*tone with*} ^{*Montanus,*} ^{*and how they*} ^{*came toge-*} ^{*ther.*} very quickly began another manner of Banquet: For somewhat too curious in the musing at her owne weaknesse, to be ouer-ruled with conceit; shee liued extreame pensiue; now whether continuall pensiuenesse debarring life openeth vnto griefe; griefe vnto distemperature, and distemperature vnto sicknesse, I know not; but shee seemed suddainely surpris'd; and neither waked with quietnesse, nor slept in soundnesse, shee would looke sad, sigh often, practise extravagant actions, and yet say little; which question-lesse kept her more in store against shee discouered her passion: But her Father was mightily perplexed, because his care extended to the highest degree of regard; and her sorrow continued with the sorest manner of trouble: therefore finding the body distempered from the minde, hee serled to ouerwatch her, if at any time he might discouer the cause. For though Physicke can cure diseased bodies; when the Infirmity is knowne, yet hath it small power ouer troubled Passions arising from hidden Distemperature: At last (some excuse of businesse emboldning her to presume on his absence) his patience ouer-matched ignorance, and one morning acquainted this abruptnesse: *Surcly* (quoth shee) I cannot beleue my selfe the servant of Vertue, when I finde the best part of my

" my selfe subiect to basenesse, and the rest caryed
 " with as ill violence: Ah Gods; a Shepherd, a
 " Stragler; an out-cast; thus to entrappe me, and re-
 " uerse my deuotion? what worse temptation? where
 " is the goodnesse my resolution boasted of, euer
 " counterminding incontinent thoughts? what
 " quite exiled? where is the magnanimitie which
 " gaine-sayed the Duke in his greatnesse, and kept
 " chastitie vpright in a simple Cottage? what?
 " worne with time, or out of countenance with al-
 " lurement? why then I see continencie hath secret
 " enemies, and constancie hidden foes, who like
 " traitours in an ambush cause an overthrow by ad-
 " vantage? But oh deuaile Loue, this foolish pre-
 " sumption of ours is but a mockerie to withstand
 " thy violence, and the glory wee seeke in striving
 " against nature, an vkinde detention from happi-
 " nesse: as though wee were taxed and indeede desi-
 " red to finish some excellent worke, and yet kept
 " backe our selues in beginning the same. I therefore
 " recant and recall my deuotion: yet deare vertue
 " turne not thy face from me, for before any occasi-
 " on open the way of incontinencie, I will feale my
 " couenants to thee with my dearest blood: and
 " blessed *Genius*, what doe I know, but thou hast
 " overlooked my patience, and brought *Montanus*
 " to patterne out the perfection of mine for to speake
 " with a liberall truth, what ere hee is, vertue and
 " honour hath questioned (caught him) the way to
 " full gracing goodnesse. Here those excellent lights
 " of

of her bodie were dimmed with moisture, and
 passion had so racked her spirit, that though the
 smart caused her to confesse any thing, yet the ex-
 tremie of paine, over-wrought the instrument
 of utterance, and with a sweet stilnesse enforced
 silence, which her father was moued to pittie,
 and could not choose but accompany her with his
 teares, being once minded to haue discovered
 himselfe, but fearing to out-countenance her by be-
 ing intercepted, hee suffered the humour to haue a
 liuit scope, and so retired somewhat pleased, hee
 now knew the cause of her griefe.

And of this time *Montanus* commeth to
 Coranus and
 Deltona.

As these feares and sorrowes had their se-
 Auerall passages betweene *Coranus* and his
 Daughter, one morning (yet not so early to except
 against good manners) the opening of the out-
 ward Dore gaue them warning of some Stran-
 gers access, and the old man hastning to vnlocke,
 the other found *Montanus* in the Court with
 a ready message from *Placandus* to speake with
 him. Truly (sayd he) welcome, and if the word
 welcome might last so long, as my desire to bid
 you welcome, I should doe nothing but reapeate
 welcome. In this extrauagant manner, as if *Mon-
 tanus* presence had strucke both a reuerence and
 delight, of his daughters griefe entreated redresse,
 hee vlied him through two rooms into a lowe
 chamber, and bad him tary till he prepared his en-
 tertainment. But when *Montanus* beheld *Deltona*
 so blouded

sadly couched on the Russhie flore, they strewing
 the ground; and shee bestrewing them with her
 Teares, which (as water cast on a white Wall leaueth
 a show of spotted impression, seemed shadowes of
 pale Pearles) in a kind of generall pittie hee con-
 demned Dittemperature for maintayning a quer-
 rell against such rarenes: then finding it touched
 him neerer, as liking the party, the eyes of affection
 bade him looke for reliefe; had he either knowne
 what to doe, or durst haue done what hee knew:
 at last checking his foolish feare, seeing Loue had
 in deed chayned his heart to her deuotion, by ma-
 ny made paces, as if *Orpheus* were againe to passe
 by the euer-waking *Cerberus*; hee approached vn-
 to her: To whom when he came, and that a little
 disdain had scorned to be entrapped, whereby a
 womanly remembrance hastned to lap her cloaths
 together, which for her ease she had vn-laced: the
 strangenesse of the accident ouercame her former
 desire, and a pretty shame to be watched, made her
 affrayde of what she wished; and her feare onely
 put in practise a confused flight, which *Antanas*
 durst not yeeld vnto, and therefore with a reue-
 rent speedinesse caught hold of her arme, almost
 bare by hasty massacking the artificiall garment,
 whereby his eyes felt now their quicknesse, and
 new thoughts imbrued a very fire to burne his
 presuming hands: As for what was treasured vn-
 seen, he imputed that to the cunning of the Jeweler
 who first laying abroad to the contentment of the
 beholders

beholders his smaller prized Riches, doth only de-
 clare, hee hath a lem of that inestimable Vallow, as
 may well suffice to be a present for the greatest
 Monarch: with the like disposition was *Antanas*
 transported, and therefore loth to loose the bene-
 fit of what his hope assured was precious, hee en-
 treated her aboard; and perceiuing her somewhat
 more tractable, thus disputed the matter.

Most worthy of the greatest worth, neither are
 teares the Antidotes of grieffe, nor grieffe a preven-
 tion of trouble: yee do we complaine to see More-
 tality the tennis ball of Fortune, now stroke low,
 then moued high; anon beaten backe againe,
 and at last banded quite away, little remembring
 that Vertue remaineth immaculate, and bringeth
 Patience to ouermaster Aduersitie, which in very
 meane spirits ypholdeth weaknesse and frailty, by
 considering diuine providence hath ordained,
 what neither industry can preuent, nor mans cun-
 ning auoyde: but in greater courages, when so-
 euer crosses chauce, there must be a reuiewing
 of the Sunne, which at the lowe st seemeth to be gonne,
 and indeed affliction reborn, when shee is with
 constancie tollerated: Deny neither for Vertue
 her due in subiecting it to so base an enemy as
 Despaire: nor Beautie preeminence in thus dis-
 ordering thy most faire amongst the fairest faire-
 nesse: But leaue this Iudgesse, & by the inferior
 tall powers I sweare (which with an Emphasis he
 pronounced) no discontentment shall affright thee

Trebizond.

for my selfe will vnder take the office of a neighbor
to comfort, of a friend to assist, or of which hee
would faine in a more kinder terme haue vttered,
but not knowing what it was, hee left her to ima-
gine, what it might be.

Heere a mannerly stoppe, and a pretie fashion
of amazement caused his strength compassing her
tender wrist to suffer some changes, and withall
a sad kinde of looke wanted his wordes to pro-
ceed from true desire: but when shee marked the
orderliness of his behaviour, and that a different
grace wanted a greater desert, then his present
fortune: a blessed hope sent to her countenance
the Messenger of delight, and crested vp a well
proportioned body to her better becoming: yet
had a powerfull reason in the time of this partie
so tempered her ioy, that shee durst not ouer so-
denly to consent to her owne minde, nor yeelde
him too hasty libestie of presumption: like a dis-
creet Master, who though his seruant bee paine-
full will not ouer familiarly thanks, but with good
order embolden him to goe forward in his dutie:
therefore as if shee could haue entertained an an-
gry dislike, she thus replied:

Why, who is *Montanus*? that thus enuiegeth
against fortune, as if honour had read a Lesson
of magnanimitie vnto him: or from whence pro-
ceedeth this audacity to poison my vertues spring
with the dregs of peeuish Loue? Or what male-
uolent Planet was ouer this day predominant,

Trebizond.

that I must be thus intercepted? Beleeue me, I am
afraid I haue played the truant in the Schoole of
Modestie, and forgetting my rules by ouer courte-
sie allowed this stranger some hardinesse: Assure
thee therefore, that in the very dislike of this bold-
nesse, all other good parts are eclipsed in thee,
and how soeuer I could be perswaded to suppose
any goodnesse in marriage, *Placidus* sonne must
take another course: for my wits were neuer so
enchanted to repulse the offer of a mighty Duke,
and submit to a shepherds flattery: but to be plaine,
I haue deuoted my selfe to another Saint, and of-
fered my minde on the pure altar of Continencie.

When hee had heard her out, as if a sudden
fear fatally prognosticated some following mis-
chiefe, or sudden anger kept the motion of the
tongue from true likenesse: hee stood amazed,
scarce able to yeeld a reason why he was amazed:
like a man meditating in secret stillnesse, who loo-
keth, yet perceiueeth not on what, by reason the
minde transporteth the vie of sense to other pur-
pose: But knowing custom taught all women the
deniall of what they wished, as though hee would
haue chid her for such general peeuishnesse hee once
againe replied: By the giue of my life, this pe-
trumpet of mine shall not accord with successe, Nor
will I haue the loss of what I esteeme to preci-
ous: Remember therefore the wrong thou hast
done to nature in obscuring her blessings from the
sight of men, remember the displeasure to the
world,

Trebizond.

to supplant. Nay (quoth *Montanus*) for my part I will not abuse what is of worth with flatterie, but thinke, that prayles proceede from necessitie. Thusliketh (saide *Deltona*) you make praying a necessary helpe to flatterie, that was cunningly concluded. But I hope (answered hee) you will not so hemme in my speeches with vnkind exception. No, no, (replied *Coranus*) be sure my daughter meanes well, whatsoeuer shee saith; and quoth *Deltona*, *Montanus* speakes well whatsoeuer he meaneth: and *Deltona* lookes well (answered *Montanus*) to be spoken vnto. But words said she, be like the passage of a shippe, leauing no shew behinde of her course, and promising olesemble fading shadowes. Then try performance (replied *Montanus*) vertue appeareth in her latest colours in action. Nay, yet objected *Deltona*, better vlt with want of something may be wished for then in certaintie of euery thing breedeth trouble. Why (quoth *Montanus*) is there such trouble in Marriage? I assure you not (saide *Coranus*) for if the parties loue vpon a sure ground, they resemble a building strongly founded, and one part depending on another equally deuindeth the comfort: againe, when inconueniencies arise, least the burden prove too grieuous, a good fellow helpeth; & between them it is made light some, besides the tyrannie of want is surprisid with content, and mutuall agreement ouercometh necessitie. But letting this passe (beleeue me) *Montanus* we are very

Trebizond.

very glad of your companie, and since your aduenture, methinkes there appeareth (I know not) what alteration. But I know (saide *Deltona*) to look smooth, to dispute cunningly, to seeme ceremonious, to bring presents, to vse protestations, and commit errors: and if all this tende to good purpose, I see no cause of dislike, nor I of liking answered *Deltona*, but to despise all these and make account of simple truth. Well, quoth *Coranus*, let vs set our teeth on worke, as we haue done our tongues, and for conclusion *Deltona* and I will visite *Placidus* to morrow.

This passed away the time, and this meeting with the time, yet could not *Montanus* (after thanks for his entertainment) but take a kinde leaue of *Deltona*, leauing her indeed musing at the departing with these tearmes: My life and Loue once for all line to be happy, and suppose, there is more in *Montanus* loue then thou canst imagine; so farewell, and let them feare ill, that wish not *Deltona* to farewell. But least he should ouerprise this iollitie, misfortune presented him to an ominous chance, the meeting with *Franio*: the same *Franio*, whose willingnesse to mischief exceeded his power, yet had his power compassed some hateful stratagems: The same *Franio*, whose arme was broken in wrestling with *Montanus*, and whose heart receiued infection from the sirruppe of malice: The same *Franio* who therefore pryed into *Montanus* actions, not with a desire of imi-

Montanus
meeteth with
Franio, com-
ming from
Coranus.

tation, nor with a slender wickedness, only to find fault at imperfection, but with an implacable hatred to supplant him, as the least occasion hapned: every way playing the Monster of Nature; neither daring to execute his owne reuenge, nor willing that he should perceiue him reuengefull: For still his countenance was as full of flatterie, as the heart of Deceit: This appeared in his ceremonious saluting of *Montanus*, which continued with tearmes of good will, and by way of insinuation gave him notice his Iorney was discovered; insomuch that he knowing excuses would increase suspicion, in good fashion told him, how *Placandus* had intreated *Coranus* and his Daughter to visit him to morrow. That is very strange (quoth *Fransio*) for euer since the Duke threatened to steale her away, wee neuer saw her but at the Feast. Here might *Montanus* haue easily stepped into a lide curiosity, as not yet acquainted with any certainty of this story, but loth to be beholding to such a man for a discourse, he somewhat cunningly shifted him off, & by excuse of businesse, as contraries, departed: the one full of diuelish mischief, the other of honest desires.

When *Montanus* came home, he told his Father the substance and circumstance of his Iorney, the sicknesse of *Deltona*, the entertainment of *Coranus*, the talk at their dinner, the manner of his departing, and the meeting with *Fransio*: withall he asked *Placandus*, if *Deltona* were borne in that Countrey? and the reason, because he thought her beha-

behaviour ouerstatly, and that she managed a different cariage from the rest. To be plaine (answered he) it is full twelue yeares since her Father and she were cast on shore by shipwracke; where euer since they haue continued with such applause & regard, that of him we haue esteemed as a man industrious and peaceable; and of her, as a very spatke of delight. Well, (sayd *Montanus*) she will be here to morrow, and then I perswade mee wee shall heare of newes. But returning to *Deltona*, she finding it burdensome to keepe her meditations so inclosed, conceined of reliefe in reuealing them. Truly (quoth she to her Father) my minde giues mee, this man is but the subiect of some extremitie for a time; else from whence comes this grace? this gallantnesse? this maiestie? withall? His last speech: there is more in *Montanus* discouerie then thou canst imagine. Then belike, quoth *Coranus*, he spake to you of Loue: I cannot dissemble (answered she) he did, & if his owne speeches had not conduced me into the fields of expectation, he might questionlesse haue marched in the triumph of his vertuous conquest. Now was *Coranus* distracted; for remembering his troubles past, the greatnesse of *Deltona*'s birth, & the wonderfull matters depending on her discouerie, hee trembled to giue his consent to any disparagement, and yet durst not buse her thoughts with her owne Storie: againe in a prescience of *Montanus*, hee suspected a worse displeasure, if it should afterward appeare

that he had been an obstacle to his desires. Therefore with a kinde of indifferencie, like a skilfull Rider, that neither checketh too hard for feare of disordering the mouth; nor yet giueeth that liberty to countenance any head-strong defect: hee thus replied. Well *Deltona*, hitherto all is well; and since you are thus amended, thinke the Gods keepe their mercy in store, and powers inscrutable: Let not vs then subuert the frame of their workmanship by beeing wilfull or preiudicate, but rather consent to direction and aduice, which resemble the props of a ruinous Building: Bee therefore affable; yet vse it as a vertue, not imperfection. Loue with relation to deserting worth: yet consent not too soone, least thy good meaning be misinterpreted. Consent at leisure; yet keepe chastity secured, so shalt thou be sure of more desire, and more reuerence: For though men say, they can be contented with a vertuous familiarity; yet is the conquest of that, the *India* of their treasure. With all bee not an enemy to Nature, in suffering the fruit to perish without vse; but let a timely Haruest reape vp the Corne, least it shed as it stands: Thus shalt thou be worthily counted a rich manured ground, and to that end wert thou part of our first Fathers Inheritance. Oh, but (answered *Deltona*) How shal our weakenesse ouersway strong passions? Fancy hath no limitation, and affection is only subiect to the outward demeanour, as you see in the world so many matches concluded

ded in despite of reason. True said *Coranus*, where Vertue preuaileth not against Idleness, or good counsell helpeth to see the deformitie of Folly, which is as easily suppressed with carefull endeavours, as maintained with retchlesse liberty. But thinke you (answered the halfe fearefull *Deltona*) that inferiour means can reuerse appointment? Questionlesse (replied *Coranus*) Destinie is inevitable, and Fate an Irretricable decree, yet is it convenient to tell wilfull youth the contrary, that restraining their frowardnesse, they may suppose it a treason against wisdom, not to be directed by the Chie of aduise. Well (concluded *Deltona*) let the Gods bee Controllers of mischief, and men the possessors of reason. Thus posted that night to the Kindome of darkenesse, and the next morning like a bitter root throwne into a dish of sweet sirupe approached, wherein Fortune threatned to be in this manner malicouler.

Little knew *Montanus* of *Francios* affection *The Story of*
to Deltona, and lesse suspected what inconuenience the former partee had concluded, and *Francio*, an
 therefore simply nourished the infant Hope of *envious op-*
 successe: But *Francio* as it were cosperring with *posite, and*
Malice, exasperated the same with these particulars, that *Montanus* should so sodainely attaine *riall of*
 to be *Platanus* Sonne: then from the naturall *Montanus*.
 Country-men so carry away the Prize with the
 good opinion of the beholders, next amongst all
 others.

Trebizond.

Wicked idle
men descri-
bed:

others to triumph in his disgrace and hurt; Lastly (as it were to despight him) to seeme acceptable to *Deltona*; so that with the spider onely sucking the venom, hee soothed *Enuie* to maligne him: Now when *Enuie* saw her selfe Mistress of conceit, shee desisted not, vntill her associat rage were entertained. Rage againe interdicting reason yeelded to the violence of Hate; and Hate tyrann-like, boyling with the heate of crueltie, meditated nothing but reuenge: with these humours gathered *Franio* together some speciall coadiutors, though not altogether so wicked as himselfe; yet easily seduced, as men yntractable to good, and therefore vnesteemed for their apparant bad, as men liuing in a liberall opinion of conscience, therefore neuer sollicitied but for diuelish attempts; as men wilfully yncliuill, therefore by their harsh demeanours debarred from the better sort: as men wanting, hauing no fetled estates of their owne, therefore carelesse from whom they did purloine; as men supposing Religion but a matter of Politie, and therefore scorning further feare or punishment. To these besides mercenary reward, and strict alliance, he thus coloured the extremitie of his malice.

Although I know your loues and resolutions concurte in one course toward mee, whereby I shall but seeme idle humeured; either to insinuate into the first, or pupill the latter; yet must I countenance the occasion of our now meeting with the strength

Trebizond.

strength of reason, and say something to put you in minde, that life is a tedious burden, ouerpressed with disgrace: It is not therefore vnknowne to you, how farre the pride of this Stranger (I meane *Manonur*) hath extended, insomuch, that if before we maintayned our estates with Wealth and credite, wee now remaine impayred in the one, and scandalised in the other. For, whose Flockes and Heardes haue prospered, but his? Whose name is remembered, but his? Whose remembrance applauded, but his? as though wee durst not put our selues forward, or seemed vnworthy regard: yet this were somewhat tollerable, if yeelding to good parts, Vertue were prized accordingly: But with selfe ouerweening hee hath set open the inclosure of an arrogant spirit, not sparing to dispise vs all: For besides the hurt in the fall, and the disgrace in the hurt, hee boasteth of it, and threatneth further: Besides, *Deltona* scorne of my good-will, hee alloweth the contempt, and maketh a tush at my desires: besides, the naming vs with carelesse, hee courteth with tearmes of ostentation, and in a iollitie promiset strange thinges, which must needs aggreuate our miserie, if wee preuent not the worst, which will follow by perceiuing the ill, that hath chanced: For my part therefore I neither can brooke her peeuishnesse, nor his presumption, but haue thus concluded. To morrow shee is to goe with her Father to *Placandu*: now because the Duke,

Trebizond.

as a Prince stomaking her base contradiction, is not to be worse abused with a meaner preuention, I meane to intercept her Iorney, and present her vnto him, as if the Heauens had taken notice of his passion. Bee therefore louers of your kindred, and credites; for though feares and terrours should be prolected, the exployte will aduance vs as men of action; my selfe will prostrate my estate in profuse manner before you, and the Duke shall remaine a powerfull friend, like a maine Rocke to breake the force of impious Violence.

When he had deliuered his minde, they onely considering the present complaint, and falsely misconstruing the renowne of the businesse, soone consented to what he perswaded (for indeed heere were none to perswade otherwisethen he would consent vnto) and so they promised with foure on horsebacke, and fve well appoynted, to be in readinesse; which though it seemed very slender against an enterprise of difficulty, yet had they reason to presume sufficient against a silly Mayden, and old Man. But returning to *Montanus*, ere the next morning had fully drawne the Curtaines of light, his remembrance brought him to a kind of feare, that he had ouerpasseed good manners in not attending her, on whom his very soule and thoughts attended: therefore he prepared himselfe, not forgetting soine addition of comelinesse, as if indeed some had taught him the way to hand-somnesse; and so he saluted *Coranus*, and againe and

Trebizond.

and againe the much attractive *Deltona*, whom Hope had long since perswaded to thinke on nothing, but new delight. Thus passed curtesie courteously betweene them; and so continuing along, they entred the freedom of other conference, vntill the freedom and conference presented them to the bondage of *Fransio* treason; who had no sooner a sight of them, but suddenly stept forth proclaiming quietnesse, and all should be for the best, considering resisting increased reuenge: whereupon one of them irreliously prophaning a Virgins priuiledge by maine strength aduanced *Deltona* toward *Fransio* lapp, had not *Montanus* stepped to the Weapon, as hee layd it from him, and ran him quite through; whereby the steely poynt catching hold of her Gowne in his falling, made her fall too. But when *Montanus* saw her fall, it was not a feare, it was a very dispaire of her life hastned his race, and by ouer-great desire to saue her, hee might haue lost himselfe; but that *Deltona* cryed, I am well, if you take heed. This directed his other sence to performe the best part of his function, which saw *Fransio* hastning against him with his Sword drawne. Now was valour almost be-mayde for want of Resolution, because on the one side Death appeared in a desperate encounter: on the other, Shame in a dastardly retreat: But when *Deltona*s distemperature seemed to complaine of the wrong, and that wrong in his owne nature

Trebizond.

but in minde of redresse, he aduanced the colour
of a magnanimous heart, and so as a man experien-
ced in the many changes of execution, he wrapped
the Mantle about his arme, and told the beholders
they should see a strange fight, a man on foot and
armed encounter with another on horsebacke
well provided: In which spirit hee put by the
blow with his left hand, and ioyning close to the
Horse, puld him out of the Saddle with the other,
not yet letting him escape masterles; but continu-
ing the action, put him selfe in possession of the
Beast, and scorning to defile his hands with such
poysoning basenesse, thought to pass out his
braines, had not feare to die, taught him to coun-
terfeit death to liue; so that *Montanus* seeing him
sprawle, as killed with the bruse, left him to wan-
der to the borders of Desperation, and pressed to
another, in the same rage, making him loose his
head for not keeping his Sword.

But who had seen *Montanus* on horsebacke
with a Sword drawne in his hand, might question-
lesse haue been decciued: for though the Horse
wanted either comelineffe or qualitie to grace a
man, yet was there in him both horsemanship and
statelineffe to beautifie the Beast, whereby the Vil-
lanies were quickly dispersed, and Mischiefe com-
plained, her seruants had not well learned in-
struction: onely *Coranus* heartned with the likeli-
hood of successe, & striking *Bastosa* *Francis* chiefe
opadiutor, had submitted to his youth & strength:
but

Trebizond.

but that *Montanus* vnderooke the quarrell, and
with a violent reuerse, deuided the Sword arme
from the body; which onely gaue him this notice,
Hee might better run away then fight, as hauing
two Legges, and but one Arme.

In the meane while *Deltona* freed her selfe of
the dead body, and seeing *Francis* panting, another
slaine, a third wounded, a fourth armelesse, *Mon-
tanus* on horsebacke, & *Coranus* well, she was well
too. Thus is the danger ouerpassed, and the hurli-
burly appeased; onely *Francis* miraculously reco-
uering was glad to liue, glad to submit, that hee
might liue; and in the submission excusing him-
selfe by the power of loue, which (though as a riual
had been cause enough of his confusion) yet be-
cause there wanted all those motives of Ielowsie,
hee being so vnworthy a person, *Montanus* framed
a patience, and left him to the dishonour of the
action, intreating *Deltona* to take in worth this
poore peece of seruice, and set forward with a
more emboldning comfort. Nay (quoth shee)
feare and discontentment are now to act their
partes; My Father therefore and I will surely
home, and attende the welcome of better suc-
cesse; In the meane space, haste you to *Placan-
das*, and let the trueth of the matter blason your
credite, and your credite with the circumstances
exasperate the wickednesse, that the rest remaine
without grudging, and you without blame.
This she willed him to do, and this he did, because

Trebizond.

shee willed: but Fate of her owne disposition had quickly diuulged the accident, and one of the parties enlarged it with many circumstances, shewing some property of goodnesse, as if Remorce had bade him first confesse, then be sorrowfull; and last, endenour satisfaction: The truth of whose report, quickly strook both a feare and hate: For who could not but feare the losse of that beautie; the hazard of such persons, the slaughter which did; and might haue ensued? Who could not, but hate the malice put in practice, the manner of the treachery, and the parties; that so shewed them selues the stanes of villany.

But when *Placandus* stomaked the disgrace, and that a litle meditation had considered on the shame, if such a president might passe without controulment or correction. *Montanus* had much adoe to dissuade him from present complaint to the *Duke*, intimating that it could not choose but he must be made acquainted with the matter by a generall murmuring; now if it pleased him to apprehend it as an exorbitant action; without doubt in his owne honour hee would take the cause in hand: but if any other humour would suffer his conuiniencie thereat, then the better course were to suppress it, considering iustice in supernaturall pitty had awarded so good a verdict on their side. This modest behaviour of *Montanus*, produced more loue, and more regard; more loue for those Vertues abounding in him; more regard, for that

Wisedome

Trebizond.

Wisedome, which knew to put them to gracing vses. All this seemed yet insufficient to his satisfaction, without bringing his Shippe into the safe and desired harbour; wherefore he thought it high time to vnuaille the Maske of his metamorphosis, rather then thus to hazard his soules life, or tye his owne greatnesse to this course any longer; besides, delay was a kind of torment to his passion; and the feare of being ouer-watched with malicious eyes, bade him dispatch: to which resolution, hee fastned his anchor-hold, and Fortune once againe thus dallied with him.

D *Eltona* safe at home, thought this safety an exceeding disquiet; yea a very intermixture of torment, considering shee saw so many tokens of greatnesse in *Montanus*, and founde her heart violently caried in the streame of affection towards him, and yet was debarred the happinesse, which her hope flattered to inioy like a man brought to the delight of a delicate Orchard, and by standing on a Bancke overlooketh the same with a longing desire of entrance, according to the Gardners promise, and yet is delayed with excuses: Whereupon shee assured her Father, her rest was vp, and shee would referre it to no other triall. Hee poore man still doubtfull, durst not answer to the purpose, but thought by cunning rather to mitigate the violence

Deltona is resolved to know what Montanus is, and what shall be the issue of their love; so goeth to Marpesius Cane, where she entertai- neth Montanus.

lence, then with reason to refell the argument: which perceiued by *Delione* (as if indeed shee could haue welcommed an vnmannely guest wilfulnesse) shee bade him not triffell, but conclude with effect. Why then (quoth hee) wee will goe to *Marpesias* Cane, as well to be thankfull for the escape of our late perill, as to present our Offertorie, which we haue not yet done: there shall the *Anchresse* warrant your successe, or controll to a new course. Glad was she of this: glad was hee of her gladnesse: the one allowing any thing, might adde life to her desires: the other, disallowing euery thing, might disparage her worth: yet the next day he brought her along, not desisting from a milde passage of speech tending to instructions, by the way.

Montanus
somewhat to
Marpesias
Cane, and
findeth *Del-*
ione.

TO this place (O happy Fortune, that conducted him to this place) did *Montanus* single her out: for as the working of his spirits draue him to pace out his fancie in the fields, hee saw *Coranus* and *Delione* passe the Grove toward the Cane; and knowing the limitation of his abode would be quickly measured: hee very couertly entered the Sanctuarie, as soone as *Coranus* had yeelded her the freedome of being alone, and in a kind of distemperature betwixt feare and gladnesse hastened into the roome of *Statius*, where *Delione* was officiously disposing her affaires. But when shee saw her Deuotion intercepted, and *Montanus* so

strangely

strangely audacious, shee neither knew what to thinke, or to say: for her thoughts were at variance betweene Desire and mistrust, and her speech was stopped with amazement; so that shee almost fainted for feare, had not feare in an other nature, least shee might be surpris'd added life to her fainting. On the other side, when *Montanus* saw the error of his rashnesse, the first liuelinesse was quite rebated; and the conceit at her distemperature, made him checke his folly for being no better aduised; at last finding ouer-shamefastnesse to be more childish then man-like, and that a retreat would rather shew a demissnesse, then audacitie a fault, he thus framed his treatise of pacification.

My most deare, and deater then my dearest life; Fortune euer maleuolent vnto mee, hath now taken pittie vpon mee, and weary of her tyranny, brought mee to this place of delight: By Loues chiefe happinesse, I therefore pray thee, make my Hopes legitimate, and my worthily bestowed Affection, the fortunate child of contentment; least you ouerpasse the glory of a strange conquest, which may adde to thy desert, what the greatest thoughts can imagine, and I repent too late for submitting Princely maiestie to the censure of a Shepheards Daughter. Till this, her amazednesse at the accident rather tollerated, then admitted; what was done: but hearing him name a tittle of that consequence, a new ioy quickly reuiued her spirits: like a friend in ambush reuiuing a private

L.

Combat

Combat, and seeing some dangerous inequalities
rusheth out either to deuide the contention, or as-
sist the weaker side; this made her thankfull to
the Nymphs, as if her Orizons had wrought the
propitiation, and accepting it for answer from the
Oracle, (as if she had knowne before he had taken
this counterfeite vpon him) shee replied.

Little needed *Montanus*, (for in that title my
liking consented to *Montanus*) to haue boasted
of Genealogies, or names of Dignitie: so that (to
be plaine,) I was euer carryed with the streame
of Fancie; yet durst I not betray my forwardnesse
to the violence of Passion, vntill I was assured of
her respect to vertue, (to whom, seeing my vowes
haue specially combined mee) be thou vertuous,
and be *Montanus*, or Prince, or what thou wilt;
and I shall then loue thee for vertues sake. What
call you Vertue, answered he, by *Marpesias* Altar?

By the sacred Nymphs, by these starlike Eyes,
(which I will charme with my kisses) I meane
truth, fayth, constancie, mariage, and what soeuer
Deltona would, that I meane: But thinke you I can
liue in this fire vnconsumed, and see this excellen-
cie without desiring? What should you desire?
(replied shee:) I hope you will not your selfe
destroy your selfe; or affecting my estate, seeke to
diminish my weath: for if you like me for good-
nesse sake, will you attempt to bereaue me of that
goodnesse, whereby you would like no more?
Farre be it from my fraylest imagination (sayd

Montanus)

Montanus) to prosecute any sinister meanes a-
gainst your owne will: for by this Table of Con-
tracts I sweare, I intend nothing lesse, nor applaud
any thing more, then to behold you like a faire
Planet in a beautilous euening; or a pleasant Plant
in a well manured ground. Then (concluded *Del-
tona*) except incontinent thoughts, and incongru-
ent actions to honour, and my owne resolutions,
vse the benefite of victorie with moderation; and
so I confesse my selfe subiected: Yet let me know
to whom, considering I determine to challenge
the performance, as you enlarged the promise.
First, (quoth *Montanus*) be this place, and these
Statuas, witnesse of our League; & Heauens con-
found the violation of our truce, & maligners of
our loues. With that they mutually imbraced
ouer the Altar, according to the manner of Con-
tracts; then kissed: and finding it a circumstance
strengthening the band of Loue, kissed againe.
Then *Montanus* sware to let his desire run no fur-
ther at randome, then to chaste entertainment,
vntill conueniencie solemnised their Marriage:
And *Deltona* protested, no alteration should dis-
inherit her opinion of him. Thus gaue Loue a
plaudite to this meeting; and Successse seemed glad
to be the period of such reciprocall liking: Yet
Deltona perceiuing the place and opportunitie
agreeing to his remembrance, which already pro-
cured certaine wanton changes, with a prettie
kind of allurements enticed him out of doores;

I 2

which

Trebizond.

which hee very carefully yeelded vnto, as well to maintaine her iudgement of his loialty, as to support his owne expectation for the fruition of such inestimable worth.

Heere met they with *Coranus*, who more then astonied at his Daughters being alone with *Montanus*, seemed so confounded, that they verily thought they had done amisse in being authors of his feare: but hee scorning the interception of euery obstacle quietly pacified him, that nothing had passed, wherein Verue and Honour was abused; nor shall anything proceed without liberall satisfaction, if a Crowne and Kingdome may counterpoize her worth. But this troubled him more, as suspecting hee was deluded, till *Deltona* razed out the scruple of Diffidence by making demonstration of his Princely demeanour; and reassured, nothing had, nor should impeach her vowes to Chastity, but death. Well (quoth *Montanus*) I see there are many entries, windinges, turnings, and difficulties in this Laborinth of Loue; and my owne Fortune tyreth mee with vnkind meditation; but I will dally no longer then to morrow, if you come to *Placandus*, a strange truth shall direct you into the plaine discovery of my Story: But mischance once againe, to their better tryall, thus outfaced Delight, and interposed this crosse.

Neuer

Trebizond.

NEuer did any expresse the conditions of wickednesse in more ample manner, then *Fransio*: For first custome made the greatest fautes scarce seeme imperfections, and sinne like a bottomlesse pit; (from whence it is easier to keepe ones selfe from falling in, then once falne to recouer out) had already entrapped him: *Fransio betrayeth Deltona to the Duke: with his story alone to Deltona.*

Next vild suggestion buffed in his peeuish eares, as good execute something to recouer his credite, as be still suspected: yea hated in the foile receiued: then the bond, in which he was tied to his Coadiutors, as if the mischief they were brought into begged a redresse and satisfaction: Lastly his owne malice taught him, there was no hope of constant loue, where he wished and determined confusion: So that hammering on the Anuile of Enuie he quickly framed this peece: After many watchings both of *Deltonas* retierings, and *Montanus* actions, it was his chance by *Coranus* attending at the dore of the caue to suppose his daughter entertained there a time of deuotion, whereby he deuised to obscure himselfe, and by reason of a hollow Pine saw vnsene, and to his soules torment heard the kinde parting, and appointment of *Deltona* and *Montanus*, whereupon he went to *Fortona*, where *Duke Rugio*, was at this time resident, and rather to satiate his owne reuenge, then for any loue to the Prince, he yet made loue the excule of his reuenge, telling (though fortune helped not his desires to expresse his dutie toward him) hee

I 3

might

Trebizond.

might with litle company shrowded in the *Caues*, where the Beasts doe vse to shade, recompence his honourable passion with her moderate Rape: For shee is determined to goe to morrow to *Placandus*, where, and whither *Montanus* with vaine promises hath intised her; so that if hee please to take notice of her peeuishnesse, and his contumacie, it was apparant there was little danger in the attempt; and his Fayth could in nothing so well be seene, as in venturing life and credite for his sake. But ere the *Duke* entertained this motion, we shall heare the Story from the beginning.

The story of
Rugio Duke
of Fortona
& Deltona:

After *Katabasy* had brought the *Tartarians* to subiection, that liue betweene *Caucasus* and the *Caspian*, his valure quickly disciplined them in martiall exploits, and wisdom reduced them to ciuillity and state of gouernment, which consisting in nothing so much, as magnificence of a court, and well ording of Citties, he presently erected after his owne name the mightie *Katabasy* somewhat neere the Northern shore of the *Hircanian* or *Caspian* Sea, and hauing married *Ickatasa* Queene of the hether *Scythia* saw the pleasure of many yeeres, and the towardynesse of too sonns: Of whom *Zalby* as eldest succeeded, and at this time enioyed the prerogatiue of a great age: *Fortona* the youngest had the prouince of *Zaga* as a large *Dukedome* designed, who induced by the royall example of his father built likewise the

Trebizond.

the *Eastern Fortona*, and had questionlesse made appearance, from whence he proceeded: but that death stomaking his ouer boldnesse of his bodies constitution, as promising long life, cald him to an vnkind account, and in his manly progresse shewed the strength of a stronger arme, by which occation was this *Rugio* left like waxe fit for any impression to augment his prodecessors glory, or submit to the vanitie of his youth and liberty: but he, like a discreet traueler, that not presuming on his owne experience, chooseth a skilfull pilot for his iorny, selected men of honor and vertue to manage the affayers of his Realme, with whose assistance he made his gouernment compleat: the hope whereof induced *Busimorus* King of *Bactriana*, to bestow his Daughter *Palestra* vpon him in marriage, whom though his prerogatiue did not fully grace with the height of Maiestie, yet being a mighty and absolute Prince, flourishing in the very pride of yeares, and beautified with outward and inward excellencies: her loue and liking ouerfwayed further conceite of ambition; so that shee liued to the great applause of the people, and indissoluble respect of the *Duke*, the rather, because shee prooued a glad some Mother of many towardly Children, had not a lamentable vntowardnesse disprooued her a Mother at all: For quietly traueilling in her hopes to see them prosper like men, shee was interdicted from making any further progresse by the archbailly of the Earth, who con-

dem-

Trebizond.

demned her as inexorable to his perpetuall mansion, whereby the princely *Rugio* had many causes of sorrow, and onely one of comfort in the expectation of her issue, to which he added this co-ueuant, neuer to entangle his opinion with any step-mothers deceit: Thus remaining a widower, and assured of further succession, by reason his sons *Philano* and *Kasbeppi* marched arme in arme before the colours of Honour, hee began to bee carelesse of a second wife, for that as a man graced with externall comelinesse, and other causes of entisement, he might either command a wanton Loue, or make choise of his owne satisfaction, and had he not in this maner ouer-liberally payd tribute to his pleasure, surely both for gouernement ouer others, & many choise accomplishments in himselfe, he might well haue bene inserted in the Records of good Princes: yet this must be al-leadged, the vice neuer grew so contagious, that it extended to spoile or rauishment, otherwise then as gifts and greatnesse compassed.

In the time of this wantonnesse flourished *Deliana*, amongst the Shepherds of *Nagania*, like an especiall flower in a curious Garden, on whom the worke man bestowed extraordinary cost and labour. To her amongst others, *Franio*, whether perswading himselfe to like, or because he would be thought capeable of some goodnesse, framed a motion of Loue: but she (as if you had seen a Cup presented to a man willing to drinke, and percei-
uing.

Trebizond.

uing poison in the bottome standeth amazed, and so desisteth, suddenly started backe, and hiring for the time an extraordinary scorne, assured him, shee conceiued, that the heauens maligned, and the earth found him burdensome: with this answer, the cumbersome weeds of despight quickly choked and ouer-spread the fruit of true Loue, and so falling backe to his owne inclination, hee presently nourished a kinde of hate, and hate not onely wisheth ill, but oftentimes practiseth means of reuenge; though some Politicians more cunningly contriue their businesse, making the outside a false insinuation, and couerly worke villany and deceit: in which humour did *Franio* enter familiarity with *Guleppo* a man very neere the Duke, and for the performance of some pleasing matter of great trust with him: For you must vnderstand, *Rugio* did not so priuately satiate his incontinencie, but that diuers according to the libertie of that time, gaue their seuerall verdicts: some saying, sinne was intollerable in Princes, by reason example quickly reduced the people, and the persons gaue easer notice of their imperfections; like spots sooner scene in pure linnen, then counter cloth. Others would not dispute so vehemently, alleadging their actions had diuers Priuiledges, and themselves were sacred from reproch: some whispered, that a second marriage (considering his yeeres and abilitie) would diuert his carelesse of the common wealth to a more suffi-

Trebizond.

cient regard : others alleadged his loue to his Children, (least the secret emulation of a Stranger might be prejudiciall) detayned him through diuers examples from subiecting them to a Stepmother : Some feared the expence of the Treasure, which must needs be too profusely consumed in charge of Apparrell, deuises, and rewards ; others tooke in good part that course, because diuers priuate men were enriched, and the mony dispersed within the Dukedom : Some true louers of vertue (as farre as they durst) counselled the retreat to the secure fort of Moderation ; others framed themselues to the Princes appetite, nere disputing who esteemed them else for bace and demisse : Of this sort was *Guleppo*, a man euer about the Duke, and imployed onely for matters of lasciuiousnes : To him did *Franio* declare the perfections of *Deltona*, and by way of circumstance, inferred the facility of the Rape, which might questionles be effected without infamy, danger, or repining. This brought him to secret conference with the Duke ; who searching no further into the ground of his malice, supposed the fellow was willing to make a fortune by any course, and therefore with reward, for that time dismissed him. But presently proclaymed a generall Hunting, which corresponding with their Summer Feast, made him an eye witnesse of *Franios* description ; and the first interview so pleased his apprehension, that hee tooke the benefite of the two dayes following ; and to colour

Trebizond.

colour his meaning, pitched vp diuers Tents, imparting the best of his game with a plentifull hand vnto them ; and the honest Shepheards imputed his accesse to an honourable affability. Now when true Regard had thus satisfied his fancie, Opinion (though many times the mother of Errours) did not now deceiue his iudgement, but (as she was indeed) he supposed her excellent, & without doubt of a better hope, then *Coranus* child. Heere some secret wrought a strange alteration ; for Honour awaked the remembrance of Vertue, and assured him, it was not to be betrayed to transitory vanity : yet loth to giue notice of any distemperature, hee commaunded a returne ; and one time taking *Guleppo* aside, vrged him with inuention and endeavour to helpe his Lord and Master. But alas (for al his first confidence) he seemed as a man distracted at her admirable presence, rather then officious, like him, which hauing sore Eyes, and presuming on comfort by refusing his solitary Lodge, little knew the Sunne was more obnoxious vnto them) and protested hee was neuer so ouerwrought in conceit ; for he vtterly despaired in the successe. Yet (quoth the Duke) thou shalt carry a Present to *Coranus*, & a Iewel to *Deltona* ; which accordingly hee did : But as soone as his trembling feare had deliuered the message, al impatient she replied. Thou subtil enemy to frailty, & bace broker of wantonnes ; hence with thy trash, & assure thy careles Master of honesty, that vertue remaineth like an inestimable

Trebizond.

mable Diamond, which is still a pretious Stone, though neuer so meanelly obscured, and content representeth a strong foundation; whereon lay what burden you will, it easily supporteth it. With this answer *Guleppo* against his will returned, and the Duke in a manner stomacked the contempt, had not the maner of the contempt made him suppose there was some excellencie she ment to keepe him from, which without doubt by the deniall inflamed him the more, and according to the nature of violence draue him without respect to goe to *Coranus*, assuring him by a Princes faith hee meant no circumuention, but an honourable marriage: this wrought his admittance to *Deltona*, who seeing shee was to wrastle with mightinesse durst not clogge her selfe with ouer many impediments, but with a Sence-rauishing Modestie appeared, as if shee had knowne her owne Metamorphosis, which so inflamed the amorous Prince, that with protestation of remaining a kind louing, and constant husband, hee perswaded her to accept of the Dutchy of *Fortona*.

This offer *Coranus* wold haue taken hold of, as thinking it a happinesse from Heauen, that her Honour should be so well preserved, so prosperously reintegrated: and a fortune on Earth, that his feares and dangers should at last receiue their period; had not her answer amazed them both. Although (most mighty Prince) it were impossible for mee to deserue so great a portion of happinesse

Trebizond.

nesse, so that in all wisedome I might welcome the blessing, as a donatiue from the Gods: yet hath a certaine resolution impugned all thoughts of marriage, and my Vowes tyed mee to the expectation of euerlasting quietnesse in a single life. By the small benefite of my Beautie (for which you haue let loose the streame of liberall Promises) I therefore expostulate at your hands, to remember your selfe, that is to pacifie your Greatnesse, from being distempered with the denyall of inequalitye & meannesse; if not, then let a hard hearted stubbornnesse assure, I wil admit of no motions, tending to the disenabling of my poore resolutions.

This sharpe repulse much disquieted the Heroick Prince, and confounded the simple *Coranus*; yet the manner of her deliuerie, and grace-gracing Graciousnesse somewhat pacified (though not altered the passion: For hee reasoned, Coustome had taught Women deniall; and the strongest Townes with time and industrie were subiected: so with a kinde of impatient patience he departed. But absence vsed him more vnkindly then other men, because by often iournies (which the vehemencie of his passion occasioned) he thought Fortune very spare; that still inticed him to the inchanting abode of beautie, and allowed him no charme to preuent the perill: hee complained on Loue as tyrannous, that bound his affection to an vnworthy subiect, and vrged against Nature, for being too too partiall, that shee against nature

Deltona
refuseth to
be Dutches
of *Fortona*.

Trebizond.

should despise him with scorn, & he (against reason) should prosecute a matter of such difficultie: so that euery thing (for the time) conspiring against him, the violence at last conspired against her; either by policie to allure her to the Court, where delicacie and pleasure might fashion her to other humours, or by strong hand to steale her away: for which purpose *Guleppo* for the Duke; and *Franio* for *Guleppo*; and both, as venomous spiders in an vnswept house, with industrious subtiltie attended, and as you haue heard, acted one part of the Tragedie already, which although diuers in a manner complained of: yet because it was a stone of the *Dukes* owne rowling, he made onely shew of mislike, neglecting indeed the true vse of mislike; somewhat discovering thereby the errors of greatnesse.

For men of power in this world sometime by strong hand beare out the actions of others hauing relation to their pleasure or profit: sometime extenuate the fault, & by way of circumstance excuse the same; like artificiall Painters, whose greatest cunning consisteth in the curious shadowing of things, though the rich exclaime; and poore resemble them to flies escaping the Cobweb by strength, when the little ones are caught and destroyed: sometime in meere wilfulnesse they repugne reason and perswasion, either not perceiuing nor suffering other to tell their faults: or vnder colour of state, imagine it demisnesse to be attentive

to

Trebizond.

to each exbrobation: sometime finding the secret of delight to consist in varietie, one vice is quickly let in after another, and so the Brokers for the first are politickly discarded; like Flowers worne no longer then their scent lasteth; and new Factors cunningly admitted: sometime their affaires are managed with *Alexanders* fortune, who seeing the Gordion knot too intricate to vntie, shew'd the force of a strong arme to vncut. In which maner plaied now the Duke his game; for he embraced the deuiser of this Plot with gladnes, & put it in practise with speedinesse, so that he welcommed the next Sunne in solemne intercessions, not to obscure his face the day following, & hasted to the ambush accordingly, wherein an houres tediousnes had not detained the, before *Franio* gaue the watch-word, *Il tempo*, & they leauing their covert suddenly surprised *Coranus* and his daughter as an vnlook't for tempest turneth the sailes about, when the sight of harbour cheereth the poore afflicted Sailers. By this means is the Duke in possession of his much desired happines, & seeing her advanced vp before him, commanded away; none remaining but the aged *Coranus* weeping, & diuellish *Franio* laughing. But who had beheld the beautiful *Deltona* in this captiuitie, would haue sworne constancy meant to out-braue mischance, and an honorable minde was not to be suppressed with misfortune: For she was not altered, nor much dismayed, only stomacking to be so circumuented, in his armes thus spake.

The Duke
stealeth away
Deltona.

Traitor

Trebizond.

Traytour both to vertue and Maieslie, take heed
 " of an intent of wickednesse, least deuine Iustice
 " gather all the seruants of Reuenge against thee,
 " as for the least hope to expect any thing, but hate
 " and disdaine; let my scorne of thy presumption
 " make thee answer; but concerning the thought
 " of wantonnesse, by the euer-reuerenced *Marspe-*
 " *sia*, I sweare these handes shall first rende out my
 " heart, and throw it in thy face. Be not so extream,
 " sweet and faire *Deltona* answered the Duke, I
 protest nothing is meant against thy chastest wi-
 shes: be onely pacient and moderate, letting time
 worke his will, thou beeing willing vnto times
 working. Thus hee brought her to *Fortona*, and
 indeed (as if he had knowen her to be the mighti-
 est Empresse of the world) gaue order for her en-
 tertainement accordingly.

*The Duke
stealeth a-
way Deltona
through
Franios mis-
shienous de-
uice, who is
slaine in the
businessse.*

NOW playeth Report her part, for mingling
 certainties with vntruths the vprore of the
 Citie, and the muttering of the people, shuf-
 fled together many and strange opinions: because
 a seldomnesse of doing amisse, maketh small faults
 wondred at; and the fauour of the partie wronged
 striketh a compassion, which quickly breedeth
 scandall and repining: For how-euer fauour or
 power may support an vniust Action, or protect
 an Offender from the penaltie of the Law; yet can
 wise men see the conuiniencie, and the better sort
 will exclaime on the partialitie.

This

Trebizond.

This appeared in the *Dukes* stealing away of
Deltona; at which some murmured, and diuers
 presumed to reprehend the incontinencie. A-
 mongst whom the youthfull *Egerius* Minion to
Philano the *Dukes* eldest Sonne; as if some natu-
 rall respect compelled the remorse, assured the
Prince, that the *Duke* much impayred his renowne
 to deale so violently with such modesty and good-
 lineesse. Peace (quoth *Philano*) be aduised in the
 reprehention of *Princes*; yet because thy vertue is
 pure without diffused compounds, I ouerpasse
 the inuention: and seeing thou desirest thee should
 be choycely intreated, I protest to loose the bene-
 fite of my birth-right, before thee haue cause to
 complaine.

This *Egerius* was sonne of a Stranger named
Bertosus, dwelling in the Citty, whom those at-
 tractive Vertues, which grace *Princes* them-
 selues, did so accompany, that all men afforded
 him their loue and liking; and the *Duke* applau-
 ded his Sonnes choyce. Thus for the time, was
Deltona quieted, the *Duke* in some hope, his Sonne
 in strange expectation, and *Egerius* in a kind of
 repining: But thus is *Coranus* in all despaire; as
 much vexed with *Franios* laughing, as his Daugh-
 ters losse, whereupon hee hasted to *Placandus*, and
 stuttered out the matter to *Montanus*, as though
 feare had made him forget an orderly methode,
 yet not omitting *Franios* despight, who indeede
 (supposing mischief vn sufficient without boasting

L

of

Trebizond.

of it) followed grinning and clapping his hands: but when *Montanus* had heard him out; like the Kings of Beasts, who once enraged roareth and beateth the ground with his taile, not in the nature of lamentatiō, but because he cannot be reuenged: so stormed hee, and seemed in such manner wrathfull, that the rest trēbled: for without further reasoning, taking onely his simple sheephooke, he flung out of doores and almost at the house met with *Franio* crying, *Deltona* was gon, and darest thou Villaine, (quoth he) triumph in such a losse? with all letting a blow flee at his head; either feare, or the smart; or feare of more smart, made him fall, wherein his cowardly submission discovered the fault: But *Montanus* bade him dispatch, leauing tediousnesse and falsehood: With that, hee began his discourse, had not the other interrupted him, exclaiming: Oh deuine Iustice? Let not my eares be defiled with this wretched breath-broker nor my hands forbear to purge the earth of such a venomous monster; but let him perish in his own shames, least others bee impoisoned with his infections, and mischieuous life. This hee vttered with great fury, and fury not passing without action, strucke with such quicknesse at his head, that the braines spurted from their broken inclosure: which not regarding, hee hasted toward *Fortona*, and hast encreasing distemperature, gaue him no leisure to meditate on the diffusednesse of his iourney. But when *Coranus* was assured of his departure

The death of
Franio.

Trebizond.

ture, he corrected his owne slacknesse, that made no more haste, considering the many secrets and strange occurrents, which his onely knowledge must discouer: where vpon hee followed with speede.

Now what estate was poore *Placandus* in, who left alone with dead *Franio*, and seeing the Hurly-burly had gathered the Inhabitants together, knew not which way to excuse the murther, nor durst beginne any circumstances, but the plaine truth; which after his reuerent Age had reuealed, and the pittifull story, with an vnkinde scope deciphered the wickednesse, they quickly conuerted all suspicion & hatred for *Franios* death into counsell, the strength of comfort, and chiefest proppe of *Placandus* life. Why then (quoth hee) am I indeed reuiued, that like men, like honest men, like honest wise men you wil accord vnto reason; and like friends, yea true-hearted friends, you will not faile in aduersitie: let vs therefore giue the dead his due Ceremonies, and liue our selues in good hopes, that *Montanus* and *Coranus* will returne with glad tydings. But other affaires detain them beyond expectation, and we must hast to *Fortona*, to know the certaintie.

Finis Libri primi.

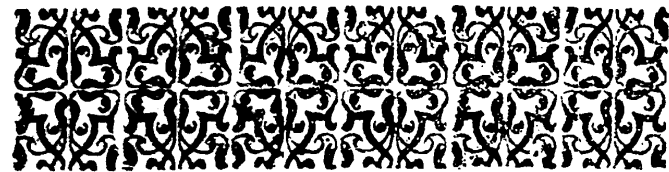
L. 2.



SECOND
BOOKE OF
the Historie
OF
TREBIZOND.



Imprnited at London by W. White,
for T. Downes and E. Dawson,
1616.



To the right Ho-
norable Countesse
of HUNTINGTON.

RIGHT HONORABLE,



*Esides the scandall imposed
upon idle Discourses, there is
euer a wanton error depen-
ding of presumption in the
choyce of some Patron : so
that when other men had flat-
tered my owne easie ouer-
wrought conceit to be an ad-
uenturer in the troublesome sea of Opinion : I thought
it most befitting to looke out for some handsome props
of supportation, and so haue placed the Daughters
in one circle with the Mother : Yea, such Daughters,
and such a Mother, that mee thinkes you moue to-
geather like faire Planets in conspicuous Orbes ; from
whose influence can proceed nothing, but sweete pre-
sages : So that hereby you cannot choose, but breath
with her one spirit of happinesse ; and I be cheared
with strong assistance against any calumination.*

L 4.

I pray

The Epistle.

I pray you therefore pardon this intrusion, and examine my Character no further, then my confidence that so great Honour and Worth, will not dissent from their owne properties, and giue me leave to wish your merit the Wishes of such heartes, as leape for ioy at the naming of lonelinessse and Beantie: To both which, with all other excellencies in your Honourable

te,

I am truly deuoted:

To. Gainsforde.



The Second Booke of the Historie of TREBIZOND.



Vch was the haste *Montanus* made after the Duke, followeth the and *Coranus* after *Montanus*; and of both to deliuer the *Cittie* to *Deltona*: that you might see what will haue deciphered in *Coranus* become of *Deltona*: who is discovered to be an Emperours trying the intricat knots of *Deltonas* fortune: his Hope, that the Duke would not degenerate from honour and vertue. And in *Montanus*, of Loue and Anger; his Loue, supposing nothing impossible to be attempted; his Anger, assuring to be compassed, what so euer might be attempted: and thus went hee forward vnaccompanied, vntill *Coranus* ouertooke him entring into the Towne, which they found full of rumours by reason of the accident. This imboldned him to bid *Montanus* stay awhile: for Wilsfulnessse repenteth, when Reason openeth the eyes of Vnderstanding, and his Counsell must be the Threed to direct him out of this Labozynth. Counsell how you will (quoth *Montanus*;) so it tend to recouer *Deltona*. Then must you be attentiu a while (replied *Coranus*;) for strange and dangerous is the Storie. Is it time
M. now

*Coranus
meeterh his
brother Ber-
tosus in Fer-
tuna.*

now (answered hee) to tell tales, or to tryffe? No,
no: Pleasure and conceits are not surable to this
feare and haste: besides, in matters of necessitie,
delay openeth the sluice of Inconuenience. Tush
(sayd *Coranus*) you mistake mee much. But O
eternall Powers! whom doe my eyes behold?
Bertosus, loyall *Bertosus*; my brother and death-
fellow *Bertosus*? With that, they saluted a comely
Old man of the Cittie, who moued with the
first vprore, and like a right Naturalist ~~after~~
after Newes, posted to the Court to be beholding
to Truth: for hauing a Sonne named *Egerius*, of
secret respect with the princely *Philano* the first
borne of the Duke, hee presumed on his know-
ledge and credite; but thus intercepted by *Coranus*,
whom in thirteene yeares hee had not seene, nor
euer supposed to haue seene, as long since seeing
the neuer satisfied Ocean swallow him vp, hee
was confounded: the strangenesse making them
both as strange, vntill the extasie moderated, gaue
Remembrance leaue to play her part; then ap-
peared Knowledge and Comfort in full life: and
after a second ceremony of kindnesse tuned the
organs of Speech to this purpose. But doth *Bri-
zaca* liue (quoth *Bertosus*?) I, if *Trezoboro* be pre-
served (said *Coranus*?) Then hath the Gods mighti-
ly fauoured (*Coranus* replied) *Bertosus*. And mi-
raculously protected *Bertosus*, (answered *Coranus*.)
Now was *Montanus* astonished; for these new
names, increased new thoughts; and the strange-
nesse

nesse of the newely rebated his first heate, distem-
pering him with a trembling desire. Oh (said *Co-
ranus*) now shall you heare a discourse of some
trouble: bee therefore more considerate (good
Montanus) and let *Bertosus* salute thee. With
that, a mannerly ceremony passed betweene them,
vntill *Bertosus* counselled to returne to his house,
where the benefite of Advice might be thus farre
aduantageous vnto them, that the Duke made ac-
quainted with the matter, would questionlesse
proceed in a new course.

But ere they were entred into a full passage of
speech *Egerius* all ready enamoured on the excel-
lent *Deltona*, & tormented to see another in posses-
sion of his delight, came home to his father very
sad: yet was he the sadder for comming home, be-
cause ignorant, whom his father accompanied,
his determination of solitarinesse seemed disap-
pointed; and but that the gallantesse of *Monta-
nus*, as it were naturally attracted a respect, his
first course had entertained a further sullenesse:
yet being a Courtier, who seeme to be the profes-
sors of humanity, & indeed arrogate to themselues
the essential knowledge of curtesie and good man-
ners, but especially induced by some regardable
appearance, hee saluted them with a very good
grace; whereby delight it selfe seemed to play in
the greeting. For *Egerius* countenance (not so
much as down'd with the difference of Sexes) kept
an extraordinary grauity, & *Montanus* comely-
nesse

Trebizond.

ness an vnaccustomed temperaure, which pleased *Egerius*, and *Egerius* pleased *Montanus*; who demanded many questions tending rather to necessitie then curiositie, answered without ambiguity or circumstance.

In the meane while *Coranus* and *Bertosus* paced out the very secrets of their knowledge, and concluded to participate the same to *Egerius*, who hauing the greatest interest in the matter might remember himselfe, and remember the Duke, that *Deltona* was farre surpassing her selfe; wherupon *Bertosus* not without a reuerent contrarietie taking *Egerius* by the hand, thus began. If the Gods had not their Iudgements inscrutable, and vnitied to supernaturall power, a prerogative beyonde mans capacitie, wee might slightly estimate their mightinesse, and step into presumption of our indutry: but because they will giue vs notice of their all working preeminence, miraculous and strange accidents draw vs to admiration, and that men may be subiected, euen the greatest estates feeble the scourge of affliction: This appeareth in the Discourse now intended. For concerning

Egerius and *Deltona* discovered to be brother and sister, the Emperour of *Trebizonds* children.

your selfe; no longer Sonne, nor *Egerius*, but princely *Trezoboro*. Concerning *Deltona*; no longer *Deltona*, nor *Coranus* Daughter; but prisselesse *Brizaca*. And concerning vs no longer the reputed fathers of *Mengrelus* children, but loyall vassals to the Emperour of *Trebizonda*. With that he vnfolded many intricate circumstances of his

Trebizond.

his birth, losse, and fortune; whereby it appeared, that *Egerius* was sonne to the Emperour *Mengrelus* of *Trebizond*, by the name of *Trezoboro*; that *Deltona* was his twin Sister and called *Brizaca*; and *Coranus* with *Bertosus* were brothers, to whose trust the charge of their infancie was committed.

But thinke you, did *Montanus* heare this? or did hee wonder at the hearing? or remayned he silent at the wondring? or seemed hee amazed in the silentnesse? Surely he heard, wondred, kept silence, and was amazed: yet quieted his thoughts, and gaue Time a little scope to play with the nouelty, expecting a prosperous euent: But *Egerius* adding a new spirit to former towardlynesse, and yet retayning his wonted affabilitie, replied. Seeing it hath pleased the Gods thus to make you the instruments of their power, let not me be ingratefull either in the diffidence of their prouidence, or neglect of regard to you: whose honesty, loue, and paines, haue made tryall of so many inconueniencies for our sakes: Yet least the Duke coupling Power and Wilfulnesse together, yeeld Intemperance full liberty (and so we may lament, but not redresse the mischiefe) I thinke it requisite to awake his sleeping honor, by sounding the trumpet of strangenes into his eares, & telling that Fortune hath an errand to relate. This was vttered with such an allacrity of spirit, and staiednes of speech, that the hearers promised to them selues, what so euer the expectation of a Prince could afford: where

Trebizond.

upon the next morning they accompanied him to the court, & *Egerius* saluting the princely *Philano*, was answered as if loue had in sumpathy pleased one another. Then (quoth *Egerius*,) let this loue acquaint the Duke, that a matter of importance is to be discussed, and how I am to impart the circumstance. Heere omitted friendship no part of her dutie; for the willing *Philano* presented himselfe before his Father, and certified their accessse and the cause.

But whether a feare to be preuented of enioying *Deltona* made euery conceit a suspition of her hazard, or some vncomfortable misdoubt fore-tolde anothers interest to the thing he vsurped; he quite degenerated from his owne Customes: vntill *Philano* seeing his *Egerius* attend vnregarded, conferred againe with the Duke; and he sommoning his Counsell, as if the Common-wealth claimed a redresse, was at last ouer-ruled by them to pensill out his vertue in more liuely colours: whereupon *Egerius* encouraged, when the day of hearing lifted vp her head to be seen, aduanced his speech to be thus vnderstood.

*The History
of Mengre-
lus and Ka-
lucki.*

After *Samararchanus* (most mighty Duke) sonne of *Rhecus*, Sonne of *Demorgus*, the ancient Inhabiter of the Caues of *Sarmatia*, had reduced his people to a ciuillie by his discipline, and with the example of valour countenanced their courages; hee attempted the Empire of

Trebizond.

of *Trebizonda*, and preferred for preuailing, so relied on their obedience and loialties, that *Colchides*, *Pontus*, *Iberia*, and *Capadocia* were also subiected, with which renowned; a time of peace afforded him leisure to recompence the time of his paines with the reward of delight. But he apprehending the royaltie of other Monarchies, applied himselfe to immitations neuer desisting, till hee had his Gouvernement and Court, a very Nursery of state and glory: so that you might lawfully haue giuen that *Lustrum* the preeminence, considering the people had the practise and obseruation of glorious things, and *Samararchanus* himselfe seemed a man compleat in all circumstances of prosperitie.

For concerning the gifts of the minde, they were such rare qualities, as contained more vertue in their operation; then shew in the workmanship: yet such workmanship as made adellicate object to the eye, and enriched the possessor. His direction in publicke assayres consisted of such parts, that very aspiring miades rather submitted to him, then soothed their owne ambition; and in his private Court the pallace was a receptacle of the nobly disposed, and well enclined attendants, whom neecessite to the Prince, made rather study for his Honour, then their owne pleasure: His state commanding affection, for moderation of greatnesse, rather then feare for mightinesse of power; yet was his power of such sufficiency, that diuers Kingdomes were in tributorie sub-

Trebizond.

subiection: His libertie admitted Military exercise and honourable expenses, neither lauish to satisfie a vaine ostentation; nor too sparing, to discover any defect that way, His goodnes in generall a sufficient subiect to talke of; and in particular so many by-ways to perfection.

As for Fortunes portion, she distributed it with a plentiful hand, and contrary to her selfe, with a iudiciall foresight: His Territories many and rich; yet none so rich as well gouerned: His Magnificence augmented in goodly Buildings, and costly furniture; yet neither so much respected, as their orderly vse obserued: His Treasure amassed by regardable prouidence without exactions or cruell penalties: not yet omitting, what princely bounty should remember; nor admitting, what powerfull licentiousnesse might inferre: His royaltie beautified with ceremonious pompe and regall necessitie, his happinesse consummate in a glorious *Queene*; towardly Succession, honourable Allies, dutifull Attendants, sure Subiectes, and friendly Neighbours.

Touching the Bodies allowance, the first Parent of the earth boasted in her owne workmanship; for his Liniments had a decent vniiformity, and Favour triumphed to be setled in Maiestie: His Countenance retained as well an amiable Chearefulness, as manly Grauitie; yet neither enclined the one to childish Effeminatenesse, nor the other to secure Exaltation:; His Speech was ever reposed,

Trebizond.

sed, and the manner of his cariage such, as neither shewed any wrested motions of Bountie, nor degenerating conditions of Princely demeanor: and although the continuance of a long age might haue brought her accustomed tediousnesse; yet health corresponded to his lustinesse, and an able body emboldned him to the naturall discharge of his Fancie; so that the greatest were his favorites, & the yong *Russian* Dutchesse *Balutafa* his Spouse. Of whom (most excellent Duke) the curioustest Rhetoricke will rather manifest a willingness, then abilitie to speake; and in whose prayles the best sufficiencie will shorten the iorney to her estimate. For in beeing so great a person, her worth appeared the more, (like an illustrious Carbuncle set out to the best purpose, that wee may perceiue how Art can beautifie Nature; and because a reuerent loue tempered other passions with Reason, shee liued famous to the world, and gracious to *Samaritanus*; ioyning to other blessings goodly Sonnes, and fayre Daughters; deuised into such couples, that for Men, who might compare with *Kalucki* and *Mengrelins*: for Women, who could match with *Arcabella* and *Pisana*.

These being the choyce fruite of a flourishing Graft had perfected the beauty of this Garden, and made an vpsot to prosperitie, but that the contention for a Kingdome eclipsed the glorious
N. shine,

Trebizond.

sunshine; and disdain of partnership in the wearing of a Crowne, ware out the print of blessed continuance: Yet did the life of their Father containe ill will within limitation, and his death make the strife the greater; because it was for such a soveraignety. For no sooner payde *Samarhanus* his debt to Nature, yeelding to the sommons of not so hasty, as undalliable a Commaunder, leauing *Balutasa* in sorrowfull mightinesse, his Children in doubtfull expectation, his Subiects in suspicion of new troubles, his adioyning Confederats in opportunitie of reuolt, and euery one fearing their owne losse, by the losse of so good a Prince: But *Kalucki* through the prerogatiue of his Birth-right, claymed the Diademe; which clayme was yet re claymed by the great working spirit of *Mengrelins*, and partiall affecting loue of *Balutasa*, who imboldned with her alliance in *Russia*, and the *Northern Europa*: but especially presuming on her sonnes vertues; with which he had drawne out the peoples loues to the greatest length, resolved to endeaour his advancement, so much more gracing him, by how much opinion thought him to surpasse *Kalucki*, not differing from our kinde of Cockering mothers, which commonly dally with the yongest, & without apparant reason make sometimes their affection partiall: yet had not her wilfullnesse been carryed with so strong a current, if other stepps had not helped her vp, as some speciall coadiutors, amongst

Trebizond.

mongst whom *Corambello* Duke of *Raganda*, *Pustrasso* Steward of the Pallace, and *Hardubax* Lord of seauen Ilands, were men of great sufficiencie. This made her goe forward, and her forwardnesse bade him not faint in the proiect; whereupon incited with his Mothers resolution on the one side, and the glory of the exployt on the other, hee prosecuted a wonderfull attempt, and she sommoned the assembly of estates, vrging many reasons for the preferring of *Mengrelins*.

But *Kalucki* all impatient at so vnlookt for beginning stood amased, rather sullen with anger, then affrighted with feare, till at last, the generall silence (for who durst presume in a cause of such importance) reduced his distemperature to conceiue, that if the proiect were a matter premeditated, she then had a faction prepared, and his sufficiency was doubtfull: But if it were onely a Mothers partialitie, hee suppoled by the intimation of Treason, and the penaltie to depose her Regencie, and contract their Securitie by honorable insinuation. Why Lords (sayd he) shall *Samarhanus* liuing so well, be now rewarded so ill: that daring not presume to imagine him the least wrong, you now goe about the greatest iniurie, by manifest repugnancie to neglect his appoyntment, and odious defamation to disenable his Sonne? And Mother, (though vaworthy the least letter in so louing a word) either will it fall out to your shame to dishonour so well deseruing a Husband: or to my reproch.

Trebizond.

"proch to be vpbayded with Bastardie? else can
 "neither the law of Nature preferre any besides my
 "selfe; or of Nations giue so much as a colour to a
 "younger Brother. But as for you, whom stricter
 "allegiance combineth to the obseruation of our
 "state and person, wherein dare you hassard your
 "selues, & suffer Iudgement to be abused, as though
 "you respected not, whether the drinke were poy-
 "son, so it be brought in a Golden cupp? As though
 "*Mengrelins*, because more effeminate, were there-
 "fore more fite to reuenge your wronges: And
 "*Kalucki* (because a peeuisish Woman, thinketh not
 "so fashionable) must therefore be disceised of his
 "Birth-right? Take heed intime, as yet your Pre-
 "uidence may dam vp the sluice of our Iustice: but
 "if you suffer your selues to be carried against your
 "duties; by death I sweare, no submission shall make
 "an attonement. Now to you Sir: (an vnpleasent
 "countenance threatening his Brother with a follo-
 "wing mischiefe) remember that Principallitie abi-
 "deth no concurrent; and prosecuteth an Enemie
 "to confusion. Besides, the name of a Traytor, re-
 "sembleth a consuming Leprosie, which infecteth
 "all the body, and leaueth scandall to posteritie.
 "Doe not hassard therefore the benefite of life, by
 "vaine Securitie; Nor be so besotted to thinke, that a
 "fleeting looke, or base popularitie can alien the
 "loyalties of so many trustie Subiects: But assure
 "you, I challenge this Empire as hereditarie; thy
 "selfe for a Subiect, the rest obedient, and all confe-
 "derats

Trebizond.

derats alsistant. Thus somewhat forgetting his first
 intent of moderation, hee approached the royall
 Throne, and had without interruption ascended,
 but that *Ballutasa* interceded, and in this manner
 set the fire of Rebellion on a blase.

I deny not but thou mayest boast, as the imme-
 diate successor of *Samarthamus*, and wast in times
 past reputed as a blessing to a Mother: But doe not
 thinke wee are so simple and inconsiderate, that
 hauing the choyce of two seueralles, to admit the
 vnworthiest. I doe therefore without euasion or
 circumstance, condemne thee for froward and bad-
 ly disposed; and coniure thee rather to take com-
 passion on the prostrate necessitie of the Com-
 mon-wealth, then pittie thee for a priuate com-
 plainr, seeing those degenerating humours, [which
 make Princes odious, are already ripened in thee:
 the remembrance whereof hath exasperated
 my displeasure, and moued thee to remooue
 thee, as preiudicate. Besides, it is the will of
 the Gods to aduance a Steward, which may hus-
 band their Plenty, and not ruine their Inheri-
 tances. How can it then equipage mine Ho-
 nour, that the name of a sonde affectionate Mo-
 ther, should make mee forget the dutie of a pro-
 uident Princeesse? Wherefore you louers of
 Goodnesse, it is for your sakes, I digresse from
 my selfe, and for the common prosperitie I
 disable *Kalucki*; considering Obedience is rather
 the seruant of Vertue, then titular Dignities;
 which

" which can seldome be incident, where Deformitie
 " maketh loathsome. Pride ouermastreth, Heart-
 " burning incombresth, and Tyranny threatneth a
 " very conuulsion of your gouernement.

But as a forward bitterness might haue aggrauated his disgraces; the wrathfull first borne of this disquietted Queene in impatience made a sudden approach vnto her, and directed a most dangerous blow (for by this time quicknesse had vn-sheathed the blade,) as if the vnpleasing messenger
 " of Reuenge meant to proclaime the strange death of an Empreffe, had not *Mengrelins* waled with his owne body, and by securing her, sustayned the smart of a grievous wound; whereby seeing the fire was kindled, hee betooke him to his Guards; and making forward, had the assistance of other coadiutors. Now when *Kalucki* perceiued the gates of Treason were set open, hee exclaymed on the mischiefe, and commaunded the true louers of their Prince to performe their duty. Where-vpon many set them selues on worke, and the place bred rather confusion, then the confusion-dispatch; so that euery one shuffed vp some action or other. *Mengrelins* set Pollicie and Valour on worke to extenuate the furie: *Kalucki* countenanced Rage and Despight to punish the reuolters: As for the rest; some pressing forward could neither auoyde a pitious slaughter, nor keepe possession for the body to stand vpright: others (unwilling to be so endangered) were ere the
 midst

midst of the hall had shortned their iorney, either in the throng stifled, or by the commersin, compelled backe: Some vsed such weapons for necessity, which in quietnesse were borne but of fashion; others hauing none wrested from such, as could not resist: Some tooke the Pallace furniture, as not regarding how they helped them selues; others made euery thing offensive, as not caring how they iniured the rest: Some exclaymed on the reuolt, crying, The Gods protect *Kalucki*; others ready to innouation, wished *Mengrelins* Emperour: Some with vnseasonable wisdome perswade a pacification; others with strange hearts fraughted with Treason, ran away with the violence.

THIS was a dangerous vnquietnesse begun *Kalucki* distressed with a few mens deaths, which no doubt had passed off ended with the losse of many mens liues, had not the Empire *Carambello*, *Putrasso*, and *Hardubax*, taken the by his younger brother cause in hand for the Empreffe, and by force ouermastred *Kalucki*: For *Carambello* rather addicted to *Balthasas* wilfulnesse, then fearing the diuision of the Empire, made yet this feare a colour of his selfe in the partiality, and so contriued the matter, that *Kalucki* consented to a surceance of his rightfull claime, and subscribed to a compulsiue deposition: This necessitie conuented, and the day of truce in *Bellonas* Temple ratified these particulars.

That *Mengrelins* should raigne during life: but
Kaluckies

Trebizond.

Kaluckies successors, or him selfe: ouerliuing to possess the *Diadem*.

That *Kalucki*, and as many as would maketry-all of his fortune, after certaine summes of money disbursed should within twenty dayes depart the territories of the *Empire*, and within twenty howeres the Verge of the Court:

That if *Mengrelins* by the benefit of maryage were blessed with the effect of mariage, the comfort to be frustrate in losse of their lines, and the name of a Father forgotten in respect of the Male children:

That if *Kalucki* taking notice of these couenants infringed, within one yeece conuicted not the deccite, the gouernment to remaine subiect to election, and no man culpable to resist any vncstablished:

That no subiect to the *Empire*, should repine at these particulars, and the abettors of any couen remaine faultie, as in case of high Treason:

Thus was *Kalucki* compelled to take his farewell of an ingratefull Country, and disobedient people: But magnanimity showing rather a scorne then a grudging at their disloyalties, left them without ceremony to the reproch of their errors, and posted to the hope of better fortune, wherein his expectation was not deceiued. For no sooner abandoned he these Confinces, but hee was acceptable to other Countries: and the place, which after much variety setled his abode was the further

Kalucki settled in Tartaria.

Tartary.

Trebizond.

Tartary, a place yeelding a receptacle for his state and with a strange fortune opening the Gates of the magnificent *Coralla* to his wishes. Heere in short time, hee prooued a worthy sojourner, the Country reioycing, where hee remayned; and the world trembling, whither his fame was dispersed. For honorable industrie increased Riches, Riches amplication, amplication reuerence, and reuerence feare; which though against others engendred hate, yet toward him, was the cause of loue, in regard hee was loth to acquaint them with any displeasing Newnes; and they respectiuous to giue no occasion of inconsiderat neglect: but remained in one vnitie of loue, as hee did in one method of discipline.

When *Mengrelins* saw his Ioy triumph ouer Anoyance, and that hee had leasure to actuate his Ambition, he proclaimed a publike Celebration, as if he meant to make the day of this Peace, a glorious Feastiuall, whereby the people were acquainted with vnacquainted Ceremonies, & confirmed the manner of the State, knowing when to appoynt, and to whom proportion both Honour and respect. This was made manifest, because they solemnised his Coronation with willingness, beautified his Pompe with cost, augmented his Triumph with Presents, and diuulged their good Opinion with acclamations. And truly (most mighty Duke) whether he had a desire in him selfe, to make his Renowne a worthy subject of

O.

Report,

Trebizond.

Report; or that his Fathers example suborned his industry, hee performed so many things tending to perfection, that euery one adored him as a God in the world, and magnified the time as the yeares of true comfort, wherein hee might haue tempted the reuenger of all contempt with scorn of alteration, had not remembrance of the Oath to his Brother, and Couenants to *Carambello*, dashed out all ouerboldding conceites: much like an Aprill tempest chancing in a moment to the dismay of a Gardener, boasting of a sun-shyning morning to grace his handy worke; this stroke a pensiuenesse for a time, and did indeed add an outward countenance of demission: For considering, that in hauing a Wife, the blessing of a Wife was to be quite extinguished; and the name of a Mother a most wretched title in her owne Children, by reason of their murder: Who could but tremble at the conceit, and exclaime on the vnadvisednesse of such enforcement? Till at last, Time the consumer of all things, ware out the print of that feare. Youth, the maintayner of Carelesnesse, would needes haue recourse to Pleasure: Nature, an enemy of Deuises, scorned to be counterchecked with Appoyntment: Fortune, the Mistresse of Alteration, stomaked the stedfastnesse of mans Proposing: and Loue, the Father of Fancie, raged to be suppressed with a peeuish Promise: Wherevpon they conspired in a league, and brought him to the house of Wantonnesse; where he was wel-

comed

Trebizond.

comed according to his worth, and ouer-esteemed for his wealth and greatnesse. For whether hee meant to satiate an incontinent liberty, heere were such, as knew the power of a Princes dalliance; or whether hee meant to limit his affection to a vertuous choyce, heere were such as secured chastity with a victorious army of good thoughts; but when that Iudgement was to be giuen, though his communication extended to variety of disport, hee onely liked his sister *Arcabella* to their greater despight; whom fauour for beautie, beautie for countenance, countenance for comelinesse, comelinesse for delight, and all for Maiestie, had so extraordinarily graced, that neither kindred interposed her neerenesse, nor conceit of mischance to come rebated his desires, but hee made tryall of her modestie, and layde downe his Crowne as the rewarde of consent: and shee considering that Emperours make no Prentishipp of their Contracts, without delay or nicetie, tooke hold of opportunities hayrie top.

Thus was the Mariage happily concluded, and speedily celebrated with glorious Triumphs belonging to state, and stately continuance appropriate to Kings, so that *Ballutasa* as a glad some Mother reioyceth, and *Arcabella* as a happy wife is comforted, till requited with an husbandly duty; and making shew to the world of an irrecoverable losse by her swelling Wombe, an vnkind remembrance checked her iollity, and afforded oc-

*Memarellus
marrieth his
sister Arcabella.*

Trebizond.

caſion to others in this manner to deſcant. What means *Mengrelins* now, to performe the covenant ſo vnaturally graunted? or violate his oath ſo dangerously made? Shall an Emperour be a bloody executioner of his owne Childe? or a Tyrant ouer his Country? Muſt *Trebizonda* be reproched for immanitie, or reproued for perfidiouſneſſe? Can it ſtand with naturall pietie to deſtroy faultleſſe Infants? or regardable Honour to tryfell out ſo ſtrange a compoſition? Surely Content repineth at the inequality: For either ſhall *Kalucki* haue occaſion of new Warre, or a wretched Murder continue an old Peace.

Mengrelins
killeth his
firſt Sonne.

Notwithſtanding theſe doubts, though *Arcabella* might haue made him a ioyfull Father, yet he ere nine howers, cauſed her to be a ſorrowfull mother. For the Child was marked to the houſe of death, as ſoone as the birth gaue notice of his ſexe; which done, vnkindly pacified, *Arcabella* vnderſtood it muſt be ſo; and the too late repenting, *Balutaſa* was aſſured it ſhould be ſo. Thinke not yet any outward Maſke ſo obſcured the continuance of ſorrow; but many perceiued the Emperours allacritie dulled, and the very life of the Court diſcouraged. As for *Arcabella*, whom delicateneſſe made more ſubieſt to griefe, griefe manifested in her the effect of griefe, ſadneſſe, and teares, which by reaſon of neglect, reſembled Spots made

Trebizond.

made by the enuy of an vn lucky hand on a white wall; Or vn luckily ſtaines diſgraciouſly changing to ſome pure Linnen: nor was this vngentleneſſe ſo ſatisfied, but enforced as many ſighs as teares, and pangs as ſighes; with whoſe violence the heart had broken, but that the ſpirit driuen as farre as the paſſage of the mouth by the life of the tongue procured ſome eaſe.

O inſcrutable powers (qd, ſhe) whom the frame of Heauen, and the wonders of the world compell to acknowledge, can you ſeeme ſo inexorable, that after ſo many & forcible interceſſions, I yet am deſtitute of reliefe, and ſubieſt vnto all wretchedneſſe and opprobry. For is not the glory of my life quite raced, when the benefite of hauing children, in the hauing them is diſappoynted? Who elſe lamenteth not, when this bleſſing is wanting? Who elſe complaineth for enioying the prerogatiue? Better had it been, that I had neuer been the louing child of a happy mother; then to be now the vn happy mother of an vnfortunate child; whom impartial Deſtiny hath not onely denied, but an vn naturall Father deſpightfully murdered: Murdered? yea too too cruelly murdered; yet witteſſe and impatient? To complaine of my Emperour muſt proceed from paſſion; for he is bound to honorable ſtriſtneſſe, & I am ſubieſt to dutie and allegiance: To complaine of Fortune, will detee more weakenes: for ſhe diſtributeth with careleſſe, and is inconfiderate in her fauours: To complaine,

Trebizond.

"against the Gods is execrable: they framing all
 "things to good purpose, and we vnframing them
 "to bad appetites. What shall I then doe? cast
 "ouer the account againe, and then euen I, haplesse
 "Arcabella must support the burden of this horror;
 "I consented to disappoint the first borne of his
 "birth-right, and am now reuenged with my first
 "borne liues right: I infringed the law of nature:
 "and am now tormented against the law of all na-
 "tions; and am now remedles because my hopes are
 "abortiue, and am now without all excuse? For I
 "was an Actor in *Kaluckis* tragedie, and must con-
 "tinue an agent in *Mengrelus* miserie.

These broken speeches had not their passage in-
 stillnesse, for *Sabina* her *quondam Nurse* pressed
 with dutie and care over-watched, and over-heard
 her distemperature, and for feare shee might haue
 burdened her tender heart with to sore conceit,
 discouered her self, and thus presumed to try whe-
 ther counsell and comfort had made a league to-
 gether. Leauing (*most peerlesse, and long I hope to*
 "*continue most peerlesse Princess*) to aggrauate your
 "griefe either with as much griefe, or more teares;
 "I hope my former vndissembled Zeale shall iusti-
 "fie, that the imparting of your sorrow hath deu-
 "ded the same, wherfore I thought it part of my
 "dutie to studie for redresse, which the Godes I
 "hope haue consented vnto in this manner: Let a
 "iourney bee made to *Delphos*; There will the O-
 "racle either disanull the vnmercifull couenants, as
 ouer-ruling

Trebizond.

ouer-ruling by deuine resolution, or ratifie the
 "crueltie, as a distributiue iustice in reuenging abu-
 "sive wickednes in after ages: by the one must *Ka-*
 "*lucki* remit the composition, as vnreasonable, by
 "the other *Mengrelus* maintaine it, as prodigious,"

This was so well liked of *Arcabella*, that present
 ioy chased away the enemies to health, griefe and
 dispaire, making way to cheerefulness, with whose
 helpe beautie appeared in more liuely colours, and
 so shee hasted to the *Emperour*, whom finding at
 leisure, or causing other assayres to tarry her lei-
 sure (after some debating of the matter) she con-
 firmed to her opinio: yet for a while she was vn-
 answered by his musing on the successe: resem-
 bling a man ready to taste of an enchanted Cuppe,
 whose propertie by shedding or sauing the drinke
 warranteth a chaste or dissolute wife: and reaso-
 ning thus, what do I now attempt; If she be found
 constant, it is no lesse than I expect; If inconti-
 nent, it is that I would not know; without doubt
 I will therefore make no such triall: but in this
 point *Mengrelus* kept not correspondencie. For
 though he impugned the iourney by many argu-
 ments, yet at the last he promised *Arcabella* to go
 in person, and sealing the couenant with an amo-
 rous kisse dismissed her, to entertaine a greater de-
 light, and applyed himselfe to the conuenient dis-
 patch of the Progresse.

Stay a while (my *Egerius*, quoth the Duke) and
 let vs be resolued, what aduenture hath enforced
 this

Trebizond.

this hurliburly in the Cittie: With that they might heare the Alarum-bell of the Hauen ring out, and a Messenger disconered. King *Zalbys* approch, whom a strange accident had drawne downe into the nethe: *Comagena*; the dispatch whereof and nearnesse to the place where the Duke his Nephew was reziant, gaue libertie to a motion of kindnesse to put it selfe it practise, and thus occasioned his access to *Fortuna*.

*The hystorie
of Xantippus
and Encelidon.*

IN the settled time of King *Zalbys* gouernment, the nethe *Comagena* was famous for the Riuer *Gozaxis*, playing the wanton betwixt the Pallaces of the Lords *Cusanach* and *Soltimos*, which as you see a Messenger bring glad tydings to one, and so returne to another, ran through a pleasant valley to *Cusanach*, and backe againe to *Soltimos*, proportioning both the sides of a *Peninsule*, with a current of 14. Leagues. For first, it went forward with iollitie to the East, and then (as if it had bene proud of some good Newes) with a statefully compasse (least too short turning might hinder his good speed) whirled backe againe to the West; and by often recourses at last acquainted the inhabitants with the birth of two sonnes: two sons famous to the world for Natures first life; famous in the world for liues strange loue; famous from the world for loues vnmachable continuance, which made death stomach the indissolution. For as the worke finished in them both shewed

but

Trebizond.

but one person in both, though parted in motion: so the mindes of both grew with their bodies to a *Sunpathy*, and resembled sweet musicke made by the well tuning the strings, onely their names accorded to this difference, that *Cusanach* taught *Xantippus* the dutie of a soone, and *Soltimos* shewed *Encelidon* the affection of a father: and surely howeuer greatnesse breedeth many times contempt, the secrete enemy of conuersation, and absolute hinderer of former amitie: yet heere did the fathers liue without grudging, and the sonnes proportion their affections accordingly; as not debarred by the distance of their dwellings from counter-changeable meetings, and inseperable familiaritie, in eating, lying, liuing, and louing together; keeping time in their actions, as if they had determined to conclude some woonder of friendship in the world, and indeed appeared like Twinne-brothers of one mother; both in habite, fashion, demeanour, and what circumstances sooner may make any thing like another: yea, it grew to that rare and admirable effect, that when *Xantippus* had with strange conflicts resisted his passion, least the loue of *Eucastra*, beautilous. *Eucastra*, and in being beloued of *Xantippus* fortunate *Eucastra*, should deuide the loue of his friend, he yet continued the same *Xantippus*, and would not permit *Encelidon* to depart from *Xantippus*, nor could indeede *Encelidon* digest any thing, but what liked *Xantippus*.

P

A

Trebizond.

AT last Fortune despighted to behold such a mirrour of immutability, bribed the sonne of *Venus*, (as the Poets vse to sing) to sow the seedes of Diuision; which howeuer they rooted, were sprinkled in *Encelidons* heart, and began to spring forward, as sweetned with the graces of *Eucasta*, which like the translucent beames of so me fayre Planet, shewed tokens of admiration, rather then knowledge: so that *Encelidon* could not but loue *Eucasta*, *Eucasta* could not but like *Encelidon*, because hee was like *Xantippus*, and *Xantippus* loued *Eucasta* the better for liking *Encelidon*; till the controuersie grew betwixt a passion ouerruling Reason, and true Friendship ouermastring Idle humors: But when *Encelidon* perceiued no way of comfort, but by beeing a traytor to *Xantippus*, friendship preuayled, and hee chose rather to die, then to be found disloyall; so that after many circumstances of discontentment, hee would haue killed himselfe, had not the working of his spirit compelled the tongue to intreat Death not to be too too cruell; by which occasion with the fortune of overlooking his demeritor, *Xantippus* was made acquainted with the error of *Encelidon*, and *Encelidons* distraction exposed both feare and trouble: yet the admirable innatced loue expelled the combersome enemies of his quiet. Ielousie and Mistrust, and by way of kindnesse, hee expostulated with *Encelidon* the cause of his griefe, distemperature, and now desperate

rate

Trebizond.

rate attempt: But as you see a guiltie man disconsolate with the iudgement of Conscience and Law concluding his finall end: so stood *Encelidon*, hauing nothing to aswere, but amazing lookes, and a dejected countenance, wherein *Xantippus* might read the mischief pretended, and by his abashed unwillingnesse to reueale, found (and at last compelled him so to confesse) the first discouerie to be true.

Encelidon had no sooner cursed the day of his Birth, Fortune, Loue, Heauen, Earth, and Hell, that thus had conspired against his Fayth; but faynted with remorse, and as if he would plead the defect of Nature, not Malice, fell downe in *Xantippus* armes, and bade him not spare to ridd the world of such a wretch. But hee in a strange contrarietie comforted him with preuention, and that there was nothing remediable; yea coniured him by all the names of life, manhood, settled loue, inseperable contracts, and what else a sweete oratory might inferre, to raise vp his spirits; and if need were, not to desist: For although his infamy and dishonor must leaue a scandall to *Xantippus* in his partialitie; yet what would hee not doe to saue the life of *Encelidon*: Cheare thy selfe therefore, and onely change the name of *Encelidon*, and *Eucasta* can know no other, but that thou art *Xantippus*: For *Xantippus* onely can discouer, who is *Encelidon*. Bee not dismayde, I prise thee at a great rate; and rather then *Encelidon* should miscarry, *Xantippus*

P. 2

will

Trebizond.

will be without *Eucaſta*. Heere grew the contention betweene them to ſome vnpleaſant particulars; the one pleading for Death, the other ſcorning euery thing but his Friends life: At laſt perſwaſion, ſome reaſons, and *Xantippus* enforcement, compelled him to take the name of *Xantippus* vpon him, and ſo the loue of *Eucaſta* ouercame his feare, and brought him to reape the Harueſt of his ſtrange deſires. But when Loue came to florish his Colours, (Oh pardon the fortune and error of Paſſion) how could thoſe beauties appeare? How could thoſe ſweet embracements continue? How could that cuer burning impreſſion remaine in ſilneſſe, and hee not be thankfull to ſucceſſe for the ſame? Yet fly Friendſhip from ſight of this treaſon. For *Encelidon* like a man rauiſht fell ſenſeleſſe in the armes of *Eucaſta*, and *Eucaſta* confounded at *Xantippus* extaſie, ſtriued to helpe, and helped when ſhee knew how, though ſhee little knew whom; till at laſt (as no extremitie can laſt) *Encelidon* recouered ſome life, &c with paſſionate reares ſhewed tokens both of trembling feare, and enraging deſire: but pittifull *Eucaſta* wretched in the ignorance of her *Xantippus* diſtemperature, accompanied him with a ſadder weeping. Now when *Encelidon* ſaw to what ſtraights hee had driuen his Barke, and that the delight of his ſoule was diſquie-tered with the error, all impatient hee diſcouered hee was *Encelidon*, and not *Xantippus*; leauing out no circumſtance, which either might reueale his loue,

Trebizond.

loue, or publiſh the glory of his Friend, beſeeching her to loue him nere the worſe for taking this courſe in her loue; nor *Xantippus* the leſſe for lo-ving his friend; nor her ſelfe for being beloued of *Encelidon*, who had once made choyce of death, had not the loue of *Eucaſta* perſwaded life, and *Xantippus* commanded, that *Encelidon* ſhould liue. But alas, *Eucaſta* durſt not truſt her owne fences; ſhe heard the voyce of *Xantippus*, ſhe ſaw the ſhape of *Xantippus*, ſhe felt the motions of *Xantippus*; onely he ſware he was *Encelidon*. Sometimes ſhe feared a pollicy to try her weakneſſe: ſome times her feare accompanied with Ieſoſie, that *Xantippus* miſtruſted her Conſtancie: ſome times a pretty kind of anger ſware to *Xantippus*, this was too great vnkindneſſe: ſome times ſhee entreated him to deſiſt from this circumuention: and at laſt on her knees coniured him by the ſecrets of her loue, to loue his *Eucaſta*, to bee her *Xantippus*, and ſuffer *Eucaſta* to bee none, but *Xantippus*: till *Encelidon* added the oaths of the ſunne, and by other circumſtances of more particularitie brought her to the right path of vnderſtanding, that ſhee was reſolued it, was *Encelidon*. This awhile her patience forbore to ſtomach, and loue to her Husband forbade to diſcouer: But as when you ſee the Fire put out by ſuppoſing the Aſhes to couer and hide the ſame, and yet the next day ſome Sparkes of life are remayning”

Trebizond.

“ by remoouing their Veyle. So fared it with *Eucasta*; shee wisely raked in her Discontent with the coldest Embers shee could, till Misfortune brought her to toss them abroad, and then appeared, that the fire was not quite extinguished; that her conceite was not altogether eased, but stomaching more and more to be so betrayed, shee acquainted her mother *Iugeroth* with the History from the beginning: A woman of that working spirit, that if the Country had afforded meanes of setting Ambition on worke, shee would haue scorned the name of a Subject: A woman so imperious in her will, that no action was vnattempted, nor after the attempt vndetermined, which might add wings to her desires, though sometimes they tended to lasciuiousnesse: A woman of that implacability, that once subiect to the error of dislike, before she would admitte of remission, shee dared discover an absolute mallice: A woman of that apprehension, that the least abuse was an indignity to her house, & then followed a prosecution of reuenge: This appeared in the discourse of the fearefull *Eucasta*; the memory whereof stroke such impression, that the impatient *Iugeroth* without care of Conscience in plaine tearmes vrged the Murder of *Xantippus*, and to be effected by the hand of *Encelidon*; nor desisted shee from reason and argument, as the breach of Honour, the hate of her Husband, continuall heart-burning, secret dislikes, the discovery abroad, and the renowne of the reuenge,

as

Trebizond.

as if because the body was distempered through the paine of the Head, no other remedy serued, but to bereaue it of his capitall member without further search of redresse.

To this was *Eucasta* soone perswaded, as supposing her honour and renowne ecclipsed, yea broken in pieces, and so suffered her loue to receiue the same foile: besides (as it were inforced, with her mothers deuillish impostures) shee was the lesse carefull of her duety, & therefore dared to reason with *Encelidon* to the same purpose; yea some-times to *Xantippus* instead of *Encelidon*: For but by their names she neuer could know one frō another, who seemed to diuert her from such immanitie enforcing some arguments, though to little purpose, whereby if the feare had continued, shee might indeed haue suspected his friend, but the worst part of such a conceit was quickly cut off by the hasty (and peraduenture vnlook't for) comming of *Encelidon*; who once againe prostrated his open breast to *Xantippus*, and bade him not spare to rid the world of such a recreant traitor, whose wauering loialtie was subiect to so many temptations; with that hee went on in the strange discourse of his murder concluded by his wife and her mother, which with many protestations hee disclaimed, and proceeded so farre, that after *Xantippus* had denied to entertaine the least thought of suspicion against him, hee stabbed himselfe in many places, till preuented from the full effect

Trebizond.

fect of his furie, *Xantippus* was enforced to a new course; at last his helpe brought recovery and encouragement seemed a reconciliation to the eternall strengthening the bond of friendship But *Eucaſta* all impatient at *Encelidons* slacknes, and more then perswaded, how *Xantippus* was made acquainted with the fault, presently fledde to *Maſtricot*, wher after a pithy intimation of her disgraces, & the wrongs offered her fathers house (to which her mother added forceable reasons) shee raised a strong partie, and determined to repaire by force of Armes, what her slender policies (as shee learned it) had almost ruined: so that *Xantippus* was compelled to stand on his gaurd, and (when he perceived, how he which only lyeth at defence helpeth himselfe but a little with defence) after to make an offensive war. To this *Encelidon*, and the house of *Soltimas* was auxiliary, and the two friends gloried in their constancie, and cared not who stomacked the successe of their businesse: till at last the many slaughters and distractions of the Prouinces pleaded for redresse; and king *Zalby* was compelled in person to come into *Comagena*, to limit or restraine these mischiefes; yet wrought his presence no other attonement, but the surceance of the warre. For *Eucaſta* (or *Iugerath* in her daughters behalfe) would not hearken after any reconciliation; and *Xantippus* denied to be diuided from *Encelidon*, because *Encelidon* concluded neuer to be seperated from *Xantippus*.

This

Trebizond.

This was the occasion of king *Zalby*s comming *King Zalby*
to *Fortona*, at such time as *Egerius* related the *commeth to*
Historie of *Mengrelins*, whereupon they all dis- *Duke Rugio*
sisted from the worke in hand to attend the Duke *to Fortona*.
who made it a matter of respect and specialitie to remember the Kings worth, as being his Vncle in blood, and father for directions and corroboration in his estate; whereupon the Officers of his Household omitted nothing, which belonged to the state of his person, & the dignity of the present Court. Thus is King *Zalby* feasted, and much satisfied to be so magnificently feasted: thus is the Duke established in the strengthening amitie of such a mightie Prince: thus is *Deltona* cheered, that no action of *Rugios* ouer-passed the limmits of moderation: But thus is *Montanus* perplexed, as confounding desire & distrust together: at last the Duke imparted to the King all the circumstances of his loue & Rape; of *Deltonas* demeanor & contempt; of *Egerius* complaint & discourse; which the King (because he had bin long since curiously made acquainted with *Kaluckies* banishment, & *Mengrelins* aduancement) desired to heare at large: Like a man tasting on delicates, who more longeth to fill his stomach after the prooffe of the sweetnes, then before: whereupon the Duke soon conferred with his sonne *Philano* concerning the matter, who as soone certified *Egerius* of the Kings pleasure, who as soone consented to obey the pleasure, and dispatch the matter, wherein he thus proceeded.

Q.

The

Trebizond.

*Eugenius
prosecuteth
the Historie
of Mengre-
lius.*

THe great Eye of heauen (*most mighty Princes*) had not fully viewed all the parts of the earth, nor time chased with such swiftnesse the course of the yeere: but that the fruitfull *Arcabella* once againe gaue notice of her pregnancie, and signified to the world, she was borne to be a mother, what Disaster sooner went about to disappoint her: which only hastened the *Emperors* iourney forward; who setting on worke all the parts of his thoughts made a hundred severall fashions of one piece. Sometimes with more quicknesse then good speed, running over all the course of former occurrents, with a certaine heart-breaking at his Brothers exile; but sunsetting on that dish, hee loathed the dyet, and choaked himselfe with the delight of principallitie; next hee remembered the contract, whereof the very terrour made him abashed to thinke, in what madnesse it was ratified then, and with what remorse repented now: anon hee conceived how his subiects were affected, it either the murther of his children should continue, or the breach of such inhumane couenants be attempted; afterward hee reasoned, why *Arcabella* importuned this travell; and last of all, whether the sentence should be reputed Canonically: But the feare of that diffidence extinguished at the first puffe the flame, and yet gaue light to goe forward in the other path; as if there were as much necessitie to propitiate *Apollo*s displeasure, as to determine his owne affaires:

Trebizond.

affaires: whereupon hee sent out Commissions, for the artificiall housing the Sea; and defensie furnishing and rigging his Navy; in which the benefit of a Sun-shining morning (nothing then practised but honourable necessitie) without further delay embarked him, and time (not much intermingled with strange occurrents) brought him at last to safe harbour.

Thus proved this Voyage prosperous at Sea, and was not altogether ominous at Land, because *Scalitorax* King of *Phocis* truly advertised of the Emperours coming, and the cause, found it a matter of small suspicion, and therefore made an honourable Welcome, a forward Spring of his owne greatnesse, and a very life of *Mengrelius* hope: But when his brother *Misocrapus* and *Apollo*s Priest had returned answer, hee would attend the Emperour at *Delphos*, not doubting of auspicious successe, hee seemed ravished with gladnesse; and in that poynt of extremitie onely afforded occasion of suspicion, as when we see a sodaine Storme immediatly succeed a glorious Heate: yet durst no man make such interpretation, because the Art of Divining was peculiar to the Priestes. So the Emperour went forward, and had *Scalitorax* company to the Towne; where he found the reuerent *Misocrapus* ready for his conduct to the Oracle.

Trebizond.

The descrip-
tion of Del-
phos.

THis *Delphos* had the report of others illustred, and the rarenesse of it selfe made admirable: in respect the place was supported by the ever-flourishing *Parnassus*, which seemed glad to be the foundation of the Building; but ten times glad, that it resembled some Bulwarke to secure a tresurie; and yet it appeared more beholding to Nature then Art: For the cragginsse of the Hill resembled a very net of Rockes, as if the Stone and Earth were layde countercompony together: next the passable wayes were so many, and hemmed to crosse turnings meeting one another, that it made a confused Laborinth. Lastly, the entries into mighty Caues, represented so many Dorcs of the house of Darknesse; and by the many changes of Lightnings, Thunders, casting vp of Stones, Sulphur, flashings, filthy stenchcs, and suffocating Dampes, seemed the very entries of Hell; which *Xerxes* made prooffe of by loosing fourethousand men in going about to robbe the Treasure, and *Brennus* Duke of *Gallia* experimented, when hee prosecuted the like theft: Contrariwise, all peace-working gentlenesse, and sence-pleasing sweetness welcommed the necessarie commers, and liberall Benefactors.

On the topp of this Mountaine was the Oracle erected; a place beautified with the cost of Kings, & venerated by the accesse of chiefeft Monarches: for therein none might enter, but especiall Priests, religious Princes, and strange Embassadours.

Concer

Trebizond.

Concerning the Monument it selfe, Fame confirmed it a Temple vnmatchable; and Time designed it the Pallace of *Apollo*, allowed both for an honorable dwelling, and a consecrated Sanctuarie: the substance whereof it was compounded, made shew of a costly Marble, and the forme it retayned, seemed a spacious Goodlinesse, staying the eyes of the beholders with varietie of object; wherein the Workemen had so played their partes, as if indeed they had determined to make their memories immortall. For *Agamedes* and *Trophonius* the supposed Attificers, are for this cause, made famous: It was well Leaded on the top, strongly bard with Iron, vnusually windowed with Iaspar, mightily vnderpropt with Pillars, substantially roofed with Cedar, surely lockt to keepe their Treasure, and cunningly enclosed for obscuring their Secrets: the inside allowing more daintinesse, then the outside goodlinesse; and both vnited to be a sence-rauishing Miracle: and the trouble to others arose from conceite, rather how it was finished, then in the labour to them, which concluded it. Round about were Trees planted, in which did alwaies Oyle burne; Houses established to lodge the companie, and Vestries appoynted for the ornaments of the Sacrifice. At the Doore stode an Idoll, which they did kisse: a hollow Truncke, in which they did offer, and a Lauatorie to wash in. Within hunge a siluer Bell to be rung, stode a perfumed

Q 3

Lampe

Trebizond.

Lampe to be stid, and a golden Altar supporting a malsie Image, before whom they must kneele.

The Priestes were the first which apparrelled themselves, opened the doores, sweetned the roomes, bedecked the Tables, brought out the Rellicks, hung the walles, furnished the pillars, spread abroad costly Carpets, set out their Jewels, trimmed the cup-boards, and entertained the Embassadors. After them other Officers and Attendants were to celebrate a triumph; and last of all, the parties approached to receiue their answeres, which were sometimes dissased & obscure; sometimes ambiguous or *Amphibologies*; sometime briefe and very peremporie; sometime true, certaine, and enlarged.

Now is the *Emperor* magnificently entreated, and orderly instructed; whereupon hee lodgeth his Retinew, watcheth his Nights, shaueth his haire, apparrelleth his body, approacheth the Temple, washeth his hands, offereth his presents, kisseth the Idole, knolleteth the Bell, sturreth the Incense, alloweth the Orizons, beginneth his Sacrifice, standeth his Circles, and marketh the coniuration; which began with terrors and darknesse, vntill two burning Tapers suddenly flaming by the naked side of the Image, discovered the wonders of the Chappell, and made him attentiu to heare the vnliuing malsinesse divulge the pleasure of the Gods. This finished, the reuerent *Misocrapus* (in his Priestly habite) drew the stately

trauers

Trebizond.

trauers before the Altar, and with a sadde demeanour presented himselfe to *Mengrelins* more sadder, kneeling vpon the ground, til the holy Priest fastned an enameled Tablet, to a twisted string of blacke filke and gold, putting it ouer his head next his bodie, and departed awhile with a silent blessing, leauing the *Emperor* to the dispatch of the Ceremonie, but the Attendants of the Pallace, brought *Mengrelins* solely foorth to his companie, who as solely welcommed him, and so they tooke leaue of *Misocrapus*, & returned to the Citie of *Delphos*, where *Scalitorax* King of *Phocis* expected his aduenture.

By this time either feare or furie hastned his departure to his ships, wherein he quickly disposed himselfe, and without other interception, then the tediousnesse of the iourney, came in safetie to *Trebizonda*, where each one imparted the manner of the Voyage, and made this diuision of their discourses; some amplified the description of the places seene; others the discouery of the wonders heard: some tooke occasion from those changes the Sea afforded; others made remonstrance of what each countrey maintained: some ouer-passing what was impertinent, disputed of the hill, and the Oracle; others more curious intermedled with the Sacrifice and the Orders, which not admitted to behold, they were therefore more desirous to vnderstand: some presumed to aske how the *Emperor* was pleased, and others dared to enquire, whether

Trebizond.

whether the Common wealth should be disorderd: but the fearefull *Mengrelus* made his access to the Court, an astonishment to his Nobles, and a heauie welcome to *Arcabellas* they sorrowing his answer was frownes; and she trembling his salutation was a command out of presence, who accustomed to no other disposition then obedience: displeasingly dutifull accorded to the hard doome, and lowly impatient effected his will.

But vnkindnesse had not thus her period: For *Mengrelus* finding the Oracle to threaten his destruction, in the beleefe grew so impatient, that the promises of comfort, and sweetnesse of counsell seemed irksome, scarce abiding to heare of redresse, and absolutely denying to discouer the reason: resembling him, whom crueltie bereaued of his principall member the tongue, because hee had nothing to talke of but wofull lookes, nor any thing to discouer, but soone moued displeasure, which astonished the beholders, who yet desisted not to pacifie his trouble, and beguile his passion: but he despighted to see any inclination to delight, and perceiuing his actions were so generally marked, retired himselfe, and was only humerous in the worst part of melancholy: at last the extremitie draue him cleane out of doores, and made him eccho in the fields, what he durst not wisper in the Pallace.

O Gods (quoth hee) what auaileth life, if to liue be worse then death? What profiteth honour when?

Trebizond.

when the shame of deiection shall extirpate the glory of former credite? What benefite in a Crowne, when euery dramme of golde must be ballanced against a hundred of cares? What preeminence in the title of dignitie; when confusion shall make ridiculous dignitie, titles, and preeminence? O Fortune! O false Fortune! Well may we call thee blind, when thou striketh those who offered no wrong; and fawnest on him, that detesteth thy fauours. Well may we call thee vnconstant; for if by chaunce a Morning manifest thy smiles, yet shall the same Euening detect thy malice. Well may we call thee deceitfull, seeing thy pleasures are like the waters of *Alphastus*, sweet to the pallat, but poison to the stomach. Well may wee call thee a tyrant, for thy hate is implacable, and thy reuenge inexorable. O Sun whose glorious beauty is the life of all creatures, & comfort of the earth; what comfort can I haue, that must be deprived of thee dying, or despighted with thee liuing; and so hath my prognosticated discomfort assured? O walkes of solitarinesse, how agreeable onely are your shades to my passions, had your trees sable barkes, and your boughs blacke leaues? For the heauens haue conspired, the earth consented, and hell it selfe concluded my destruction. Why then base Dieties, iniurious Fortune, vnprofitable Sunne, and vnconth Deserts; spare not your malice, and powre out the liquor of your deadliest poison: if not so yet what

Trebizond.

"terror intrudeth with suspicion: But witlesse & impatient: whether am I carried with these outrages; either there is truth or falshood: if the first, what preuention? if the latter, why was any iorney? yet shall I be so childish to shrinke vnder this feare; as though each paltry ceremony were the armes of Religion, or coofening deuice of Priestes a countermaining of the actions of Kings? tush; I will not submit to such mockery, nor suffer my selfe to be the stall of derision. No, no; before I consent to be so sottishly baffled: Murder, Fury, & Contempt of all Women shall reuenge my distemperature.

In this mood he hasted toward the Pallace, but the instant violence of his Resolution was thus strangely rebated: Eare the tract of the groue had fully conduced him to the end, a sodden storme intercepted further hastinesse, and compelled his retreat to a place of shelter: now; whether the nature of the tempest effectuated drowfinesse; or his spiritues wried with meditation desired rest: or the very braine dried with sorrow shrunk vp the stringes of his eyeliddes; or him selfe was willing to this course to ouerpasse his feare; he quietly fell a sleepe, had not his sleepe the more disquieted him, like a man repairing a ruinous house, and pulling downe aparte halerh also the whole to his greater charge: For a formidable dreame thus surprised his repose. An Eagle mounting to her nest had onely too young ones to feed, but whether she conceiued vnkindnesse against them or in

*Mengrelins
troubled
with a
Dreame.*

the

Trebizond.

the misfortune of her rauin brought not wherewithall to succour them; or displeased at some other accident, shee threwe them to the ground, leauing, her selfe childlesse, and them liuelesse: yet they recouered, and miraculoufly gathering new life, and extraordinary stature returned, ere their mother had made a second flight; seeming by their demeanour as though they come to comfort her: but shee stomacking the curtesie, conuerted her loue to rage, and began a manner of contention against them; they seeing the daunger desisted awhile, till very necessitie of life draue them to offence; and offence increasing with anger, anger forgot it selfe, and so betweene them the olde one was torne in pieces, which when a better consideration deliberated on, with a monstrous howling they departed: the noyse whereof awaked *Mengrelins*, so his Dreame ended, and the tempest ended, but a worle dismay began then before.

At last remembring himselfe, he hasted to a private Posterne of the pallace, where finding the appointed Comptrollor of his house, hee with him imparted such secrets, that as the charge was of importance, his dispatch was with speedinesse. For he presently returned with sadnesse from the *Empresse*, and trouble from the Court; shee submitting to his appointment, and they appointing that nights libertie, if it pleased him to visite her; whereupon he hasted vp, and dismissing all from his presence, conferred onely with his mother about

R 2

bout

Trebizond.

bout strange things. and tolde his sister *Pisana* his
 cruell resolution; wherein the suspition was so ter-
 rible, that forgetting the weaknesse of his *Em-
 presse*, hee left them and thus astonished the help-
 wanting Princeesse: with a soule-vexing preamble:
 „ Vnfortunate *Arcabella*, not in that thou art the
 „ daughter of *Samarchanus*, but wife of *Mengre-
 lius*: vnderstand by me; that I am accursed for my
 „ owne sake, and thou art cast with the same verdict
 „ for my sake, as being the instrumentall cause of
 „ unhappinesse: the Oracle confirming thee a mo-
 „ ther of strange Issue, pronouncing my deiection
 „ by my sonne, death by my daughters husband,
 „ and confusion, if I infringe the oth to *Kalucki*; nor
 „ imagine I am caried away with supposes: For
 „ what I haue rusfully reported, thou mayest pitti-
 „ fully ouer-looke, with that he shewed them *Mi-
 socrapus* Tablet, and they read the Prophesie thus
 insculp'd.

*Apollos doome will not the King delude,
 Yet breatheth terror, vengeance, and despight;
 A male, and female shall one birth conclude
 By Princely meanes obscured from thy sight.*

*The sonne shall live, how euer rage conspire
 To cut the threed our Destinies haue spun,
 And in thy life against his owne desire
 Possesse the Throne, which Samarchanus wonne.*

Trebizond.

*The daughters Lone a Shepherd shall obtaine
 By strange aduventure undisparaged,
 And he will end thy peace, life, Kingdoms raigne,
 When Trebizonda shall be foraged.*

*Beloue, or not; all's one: I yet conclude,
 Apolles doom will not the King delude.*

This they read, and to this was some reply in
 redinesse, but *Mengrelus* interposed this breuitie;
 that my former Oath may therefore bee kept in-
 uiolate, and my vexed spirits from forer out-rage
 restrained, I command (what euer vnreasonable-
 nesse seeme in the command) that as soone as Na-
 ture hath brought thy children into the light, thy
 own hands depriue them of the light; this see thou
 regard to performe, and performe as thou regar-
 dest thy life; but *Arcabella* permitted not the free-
 dom of this bitterness, for she thus aduentured to
 repell it.

What inhumane crueltye is heere threatned,
 and vnmanly prosecutions deuised; nothing but
 inordinate passions, distempered behauiour, bro-
 ken sleeps, fearefull out-cries, inconsiderate vows,
 and vnnaturall tyrannies? Neere tell mee of vn-
 princely protestations, better resolue to trans-
 gresse enforced contracts, which satisfaction may
 counteruaile; then continue in settled wickednesse
 which repentance cannot mitigate? better submit
 to inscrutable mercie, whose goodnesse euer ex-
 ceedeth formidable appearance, then execute ma-
 licious

Trebizond.

„ licious wilfulnesse, whose out-rages are seldome
 „ preuented? What Law, Iudgement, or Reason
 „ wil allow, condemne, disappoint? The massacre
 „ of innocent Babes; the Preuiledge of sacred Prin-
 „ ces; the right of Legitimate Heires. But to the
 „ purpose; hath heauenly reuolution threatned an
 „ ouerthrow? What earthly meanes can prohibite
 „ the pleasure of the Gods; hath our feare taken
 „ roote from the Oracle of *Apollo*? What humane
 „ cunning shall hinder the course of their springing?
 „ Yet peraduenture you haue mistaken: what was
 „ prophesied, or prophesied what your selfe haue
 „ mistaken: besides each fond Dreame must not be
 „ beleueed, or lying Priest allowed; as for diuine re-
 „ solutions, neither can the reaching wit of man im-
 „ peach the credite, nor Furie of deuils controule the
 „ enforcement. By the paines therefore of *Balutasa* in
 „ our birth I desire; by the teares & sadnes of *Pisana*:
 „ by my owne chastitie; by thy aduancement to this
 „ Empire; by the secrets of our marriage I coniure;
 „ either your patience to tollerate the burden of
 „ heauenly Imposition, or resuscitate your allacritie
 „ to recouer your renowne: by the one you shall be
 „ sure to proceed in a good course; by the other
 „ confirme the faith of your subiects toward you;
 „ who settled so long in a happy peace, & confirmed
 „ in the Loue of a Royall Prince, wil neither hazard
 „ the one, nor leaue the other, though *Kalucky*
 „ should imagine there were cause of innouation.
 „ But what was this otherwise, then to spit against
 „ the

Trebizond.

the winde, whose violence returneth the filth in-
 „ to thy face, or to impart the sweetnesse of musick”
 „ to a deafe auditorie. For hee either not hearing,
 „ because he minded it not; or not minding, because
 „ it liked not: or not liking, because it pleased not;
 „ or not pleasing, because it disagreed to his humo-
 „ rous suspection, answered; My will shall now stand
 „ for a Lawe, and pronounceth death to thy chil-
 „ dren; or losse of thy owne life; with which conclu-
 „ sion of death departing, as the beginning was
 „ death, the proceeding death, and the ende death,
 „ so no doubt had it finished with a double death, if
 „ prouident carefulnesse had not preuented despe-
 „ rate quicknesse. For the Empreffe all intraged, put
 „ in practise diuers motions of a broken spirit; as ra-
 „ shing of her ornaments of Maiestie; scratching her
 „ louely face with a manifest rebellion against beau-
 „ tie, disscuering her daintie plighted tresses in scorn
 „ of comelinesse, and bethumping her panting sides
 „ swelling with the life striving within; so that the
 „ Ladyes had a taxe of difficultie imposed to with-
 „ hold her from a desperate crueltie, til a new worke
 „ proposed it selfe: for her spirites weakened with
 „ the threases of her pangs; and her pangs increasing
 „ with child-bearing trauell, subiected her to neces-
 „ sitie of life, and induced them to further her deli-
 „ uerance, which was done in such reuerent manner,
 „ and womanly order, that the secret was secret to
 „ themselues, and the hurliburly consisted in the acti-
 „ on, which busied, and not in the parly, which trou-
 „ bled them,

Thus

Trebizond.

*The Em-
presse is deli-
uered of two
children, the
one named
Trezoboro,
the woman
Brizaca.*

Thus may the next Morning find fame abroad
to declare the hazard of *Acabella* her selfe,
and the birth of two Princes; who though they
seemed marked for the court of life, yet durst they
not but appoint them to the house of death; allow-
ing onely this fauour, to name them before they
went that their entertainment might bee like Em-
presse children; so the man was called *Trezoboro*,
and the woman *Brizaca*, and thus began their
Tragedie.

No sooner had the carefull *Ballutasa* clogged
the mothers armes with so precious a burden, but
shee afforded them ghastly looks and sore out-
cries, the children smiling but newe borne, and
laughing the faster for her threatening the greater;
which had shee warily marked (though the dange-
rous choise caused the preferment of her owne
life, whereby shee demaunded the instrument of
of death) yet surely would the heart neuer haue
consented to so pittilesse an action, nor the tongue
so quickly expressed the consent of the heart. For
in dimnesse of sight (teares still hindring the fulnes
of seeing) beholding how pleasure and delight
made reiance in their countenance, shee forgate
either to doe or to speake; and proceeding further,
but it forth into abrupt speeches, threatening to kil
her selfe with them. But the mother fore-seeing
the inconueniences of a troubled spirit, by policie
wrested the knife from her handes, and by force
tooke

Trebizond.

tooke the children out of her armes, imploying
another in that butcherly office, who had charge
to hast with diligence, and dispatch with secrecie.

The Ladie daring not denie, what yet she durst
not complish; had libertie (teares and kneeling
procuring this libertie) to depart out of sight; and
so retired herselfe into some obscure corner; mis-
trusting the light would haue made her ashamed
to murther infants: but heere a conscience not to
doe amisse, ouer-wrought with a sudden timorous-
nesse, that the heart repented; and the hands could
not: Then she tryed a place where shee might see
what shee did; but now their smiles caused so many
teares, that shee was neither able to abide them
laughing, or her owne selfe trembling: Once a-
gaine shee posted to the corner of a Groue, but here
a sudden quaking turned the sharped edge to her
owne heart, as shee profered her hand to their
throat: At last remembering the penaltie, shee con-
cluded her owne life deater then all the Princes in
the world; so that growing halfe angry, shee tooke
again the knife, and more stoutly went forward;
yet proffering a stroake roared out right, fainting
for feare, and fearing euer after so to presume:
thus as she went shee returned, prostrating her selfe
both before the mother, and the mothers mother,
desiring to abide a thousand torments, rather then
imagine a thought amisse against them; so that a
new course of immolation must be taken in hand,
or some strange deuise of concealment put in pra-
cise.

*The Em-
presse is deli-
uered of two
children, the
one named
Trezoboro,
the woman
Brizaca.*

THus may the next Morning send fame abroad
to declare the hazard of *Acabella* her selfe,
and the birth of two Princes; who though they
seemed marked for the court of life, yet durst they
not but appoint them to the house of death, allow-
ing onely this fauour, to name them before they
went that their entertainment might bee like Em-
presse children; so the man was called *Trezoboro*,
and the woman *Brizaca*, and thus began their
Tragedie.

No sooner had the carefull *Ballutasa* clogged
the mothers armes with so precious a burden, but
shee afforded them ghastly lookes and sore out-
cries, the children smiling but newe borne, and
laughing the faster for her threatening the greater;
which had shee warily marked (though the dange-
rous choise caused the preferment of her owne
life, whereby shee demaunded the instrument of
of death) yet surely would the heart neuer haue
consented to so pittilesse an action, nor the tongue
so quickly expressed the consent of the heart. For
in dimnesse of sight (teares still hindring the fulnes
of seeing) beholding how pleasure and delight
made reſiance in their countenance, shee forgot
either to doe or to speake; and proceeding further,
burst forth into abrupt speeches, threatening to kil
her selfe with them. But the mother fore-seeing
the inconueniences of a troubled spirit, by policie
wrested the knife from her handes, and by force
tooke

tooke the children out of her armes, imploying
another in that butcherly office, who had charge
to hast with diligence, and dispatch with secrecie.

The Ladie daring not denie, what yet she durst
not complish, had libertie (teares and kneeling
precurring this libertie) to depart out of sight; and
so retired herselfe into some obscure corner; mis-
trusting the light would haue made her ashamed
to murder infants: but heere a conscience not to
doe amisse, ouer-wrought with a sudden timorous-
nesse, that the heart repented; and the hands could
not: Then she tryed a place where shee might see
what she did; but now their smiles caused so many
teares, that shee was neither able to abide them
laughing, or her owne selfe trembling: Once a-
gaine she posted to the corner of a Groue, but here
a sudden quaking turned the sharped edge to her
owne heart, as shee profered her hand to their
throat: At last remembring the penaltie, shee con-
cluded her owne life deater then all the Princes in
the world; so that growing halfe angry, she tooke
againe the knife, and more stoutly went forward;
yet proffering a stroake roared out right, fainting
for feare, and fearing euer after so to presume:
thus as she went shee returned, prostrating her selfe
both before the mother, and the mothers mother,
desiring to abide a thousand torments, rather then
imagine a thought amisse against them; so that a
new course of immolation must be taken in hand,
or some strange device of concealment put in pra-

Trebizond.

Cite; whereupon they reasoned among themselves on the fame of the action, the charitie of the deed, and the honour of the attempt: nor left they out the difficultie of the enterprise, the penaltie of infringing the Emperors pleasure, the way to prevent the greatest mischief, which was the access to see them murdered, nor the recompence, which time might recover, if the Princes should be preserved: so that *Ballutasa* made *Arcabella* strengthen her selfe with the returned spectacle, taught *Arcabella* meanes to bee patient; and patience in her anguish, told *Arcabella*, *Trezobora* and *Bri- zaca* should live, and reioyced with *Arcabella*, for that *Gellida* and *Perinibum* undertooke the matter.

How *Gellida*
and *Perin-*
ibum saved
the Princes.

These were two daughters of the King of *Capadocia*, *Opacus*, who kept his abode at the Citie of *Archelaies*, so famous for the circumferenciall Channell, which the River *Haly* by winding it selfe about it doth make, and in a tolling proude of the action, halseth to the great *Euxinum* to boast of his passage. Now by reason hee was contributor to the Empire, and had setled his brother *Cicciro* in the great Office of *Dianas* Priest-hood in *Thracia*, these Ladies from their Vnles privilege wrought the idea of the childrens security, and presently posted to *Cicciroxus*, to whom they discovered the whole proesse, the penaltie of the Law, the cruell determination of the Emperour,

and

Trebizond.

and the shortnesse of time, as being limited but fourteene dayes of returne: When the reuerent *Arch-Priest*, heard the discourse, rather conceiuing well on the piety of his Nieces with their *Honorable* pollycie, then disputing on feares or troubles depending like a man prising integritie before worldly respect, He confirmed the action, and thus briefly warranted likelyhood of successe: Although (*Royall Ladies*) as a man subiect to the weaknesse of our first frailty, I might seeme amazed with your strange story and paines taking: yet sometime made acquainted with the like occurrences, and peraduenture matters of greater secret, though not of such consequence, I desist from vnnecessary questions, and thus giue light to your furtherance. *Dianas* sacrifices are euery Moone celebrated the first day; and consist of humane blood from the Veines of young infants, wherewith we besprinkle the altares and then consume the bodies with fier, other ceremonies are infinite, and easier to be knowne by eye witnesse then report, now by vertue of my authority will I proclame the necessitie of a new supply, out of which you shall choose a cupple a Male and Female, and with them depart to *Trebizond*, presenting the *Empres* this signe of my affection, and duty. For if *Mengrelus* importune the murder, which he will quickly doe, then may these sollicitate the cruelty, and you with the true *Princes* escape to *Capadocia*, if this please; detract no time

§ 2.

but

Trebizond.

“but returne in peace: if not; to morrow is the day
 “of pacification, and you shall vnderstand the plea-
 “sure of the Goddesse:

But the *Ladies* quickly apprehended *Cicotoxus*
 deuiſe and thought it bootleſſe to make further
 tryall, therefore gratifying their Vncle they retur-
 “ned to the *Empreſſe*, as you ſee the friend of a faul-
 “tie ſubiect to ſome great *Prince*; who either con-
 “demneth to death or baniſhment: for ſhee remai-
 “ned all this while in diſcomforts and doubt, be-
 “cauſe whatſoeuer chanced, ſhe muſt be deſtroyed
 of her Children; but by that time *Gellida* and *Pe-
 rinthum* had pacified with reaſon, and enforced
 argument of two inconueniences; to beare the leſ-
 ſer burden, ſhe cheared her ſelfe, and ſomewhat
 rayſing her body with a heart enforcing fearefull-
 neſſe, and teares compounded of ſorrow and glad-
 neſſe deliuered her Twinnes to the *Ladies*; who re-
 ceiuied them with a modeſt ſilneſſe and departed
 accordingly, leauing the ſtrangers like ſilly lambes
 in a Butchery:

No ſooner were they thus diſmiſſed, but the
Emperour (infringing the particulars of his owne
 ſtate) would needs viſit *Arcabella*, and in perſon
 behold the execution: For thus it chanced: ſince
 the time of his ſuſpition and fearefull Dreame, he
 was much conuerſant with *Belgorundo* a magitian
 now counted in Court, but till this neceſſity neuer
 eſteemed, nor reputed worthy ſuch a title,
 had not fortune beene the Maſter, and meere
 hap

Trebizond.

happ the Miniſter of his renowne, becauſe *Mengrelius*
 firſt acquainted him with the covenantes
 betweene *Kalucki* & himſelfe, & after with the vi-
 ſion of the *Eagles*, which he enterpreted by him-
 ſelfe and his Children, wherein he ſo iumped with
 the *Emperours* icloſie, and indeed ſecoded the Pro-
 phetie of the Oracle, (which was not as yet
 diſcouered to any body,) that he ſeemed to dote
 on his ſkill, and graced him with a Roabe of Pur-
 ple, a Cape of Maintenance, and winged rod like
Mercuries Caduceus: withall he commaunded the
 Court to honour him for his reſpect, ſo that his re-
 putation accrewed from *Mengrelius*, will and he
 made his owne power the meanes to continue it;
 which he might the better do, becauſe the birth of
 the *Princes* chanced as was before intimated; be-
 ſides *Belgorundo* (vnderhand acquainted with the
Empres vnwillingneſſe to the murder, and flat de-
 niall to be the executioner) he reucaled it to the
Emperour, and wrought a further ampliati-
 on of his credite, by inferring the new diſcoueries, con-
 cerning his brother, and the warres likly to enſue,
 if the covenants betweene them were infringed:
 Vvherupon the *Emperour* ſeemed in a manner diſ-
 tracted conceiuing it would be ſo, and fearing
 it ſhould be ſo, as if indeed it were ſo, and with the
 miſdoubt of he knew not what, rather raging then
 diſtempred haſted to *Arcabella*, threatening nothing
 but ſier and ſword, if they once immagined to de-
 ceiuie him: they againe exclaimed, as farre as they
 durſt,

Trebizond.

durst, & dared to execrate all incantations and deluding forceries: but neither exclamations nor execrations, nor the sweete infants themselves mollesied the hard harted *Emperor*. For he beheld the Massacre in person, leauing them to what pacification, they could procure; and returned himselfe to see, who durst find faulte:

By this time are *Gellida* and *Perinthum* welcomed into *Cappadocia*, as gracious to *Opianus* their father, and gratified by the subjects of the kingdome: yet concealing the secrets of their iorney they watched an opportunitie thus to dispose of the *Princes*, *Coranus* & *Bertosus* too brothers dwelling together in one house, and hauing married *Dalie* and *Phemon*, too sisters not altogether of Ignoble parents assured the world, that loue and good order can assuage *Envy* and *Contention*: For whether their delight one in another conuicted those displeasures, which passe betweene man and man, nothing was offensive, or if it were the offence neuer appeared, or whether the time afforded no scope to the ambition of men, or peeuishnesse amongst women, the husbandes carefully endeauored to looke to their businesse, the wiues modestly

The Empres
Children deli-
uered to
Coranus and
Bertosus, too
Brothers in
Capadocia:

agreed to content their husbandes, and both like a well made bundell of sweete smelling flowers, yeeked comfort to the fence and life: To these (most mighty King and Duke) weare these *Princes* deliuered, and these (pointing to *Coranus* and *Bertosus* indeed) be the men accountable for this reck-
ning.

Trebizond.

ning; so that if their Fortune be worth the discovering from their Infancie forward, no doubt by their discourses the truth will in more liuely colours appeare.

NOW by the plentious times of *Katabasies* *Montanus* *hearing the* *Historie of* *Mengrelus* *is much* *troubled* *when the* *Duke con-* *fesseth that* *he loneth* *Delta na* *victories* (quoth King *Zalby*) I am much satisfied in the redaction of this *Chaos*, because till now Fame hath bene to sparing of her secrets, and the report of the *Trebizondian* turmoiles was either denied the truth, or augmented according to the disposition of the author. For we knew that *Mengrelus* possessed the *Diadem*, and *Kalucki* meant to be beholding to his owne valour for another kingdome: whercunto (as if an heroicall presumption had been the breath of some heauently voyce) Fortune quickly lifted him vp, and gaue him the further *Tartarie* in reward of his paines, which first made him passage through my vpper *Gomazena*, and after wrought his acceptation with the magnanimous *Mullumalla* the widow, *Empresse* of the late deceased *Barka*: so that by your fauour (Nephew *Rugio*) I wil gratulate *Egerius* for his participating this Noueltie; and entreat *Coranus* and *Bertosus* (seeing we are so forward on our iourney) not to leaue vs, till we come to safe harbour. All this and more (answered the Duke) shall be but part of my dutie, yet doth the eyes of feare forsake, that the end will be worse then the beginning;

Trebizond.

ning; and both beginning and ende vnite a crof-
nelle againſt me. For *Egerius* himſelfe is diſplea-
fed, *Bertoſus* dreadfull, and *Coranus* miſtruſteth my
loue to *Deltona*.

But when *Montanus* heard the name of loue,
ſo ſadly pronounced, and the name of *Deltona*,
and the name of anothers loue to *Deltona* (like the
Indian Odonta, who by the hunters noyſe is afflu-
red of trouble and diſquiet, and yet rowſeth him-
ſelfe rather to prepare his courage to reſiſt, then
by policie to eſcape) he ſtarted vp, and ſomewhat
angerly (for his afflicte furie was moderated)
ſpake to this purpoſe. Great Princes, as you ex-
peſt dutie and alleageance from your ſubiects, ſo
muſt you be the authors of iuſtice and vertue in
your ſelues; els may you be feared for tyrants, and
hated for being feared; els may you incur the
danger of repining, which at aduantage is ſubiect
to inuouation, & wil queſtionleſſe ſubborne eue-
ry traiterous reuolt; els may yee awake a ſleeping
enemie, as ſometimes the private occasions of one
Kingdome maketh partes-taking from another.
Let Honour then ouer-looke his *Index* for parti-
cular directions, and you maintaine goodneſſe for
the enlargement of renowne: as for the matter in
hand, a compulſiue loue is abſolute incontinencie;
and the diſſeizing of anothers right is worſe then
tyrannie, eſpecially in a matter of ſuch conſequence
as the diſturbig the beautilous *Deltona*, whom
ſome heauenly influence hath warranted that I
doe

Trebizond.

and muſt enioy: aſſure you then no deuice, or
force of man ſhall bereaue me of my claime, con-
ſidering my intereſt.

Looke how ſome ſtrange apparition doeth ſet
on worke the eyes of ſuch as are moued with vo-
uelties; ſo did the ſuddenneſſe of *Montanus* ſpeech
amaze the hearers: for the King maruailed, *Rugio*
ſtomached, *Egerius* gazed, *Coranus* with *Bertoſus*
trembled, & all were ſilent; vntill the Duke giudg-
ing at the reprehention, durſt not giue way (as he
ſuppoſed) to ſuch audaciouſneſſe, but thought to
like the violence in this manner. Boldly ſpoken
what ere thou art, yet ouer-caryed With preſump-
tion (which many times ouer-throweth a good
purpoſe, by taking a wrong courſe to ſuppreſſe
a bad te) thou abuſeſt a Prince, and haſt waded fur-
ther then ſtrength is able to deliuer, or policie to
refraine: beſides it is not for Shepheards and men
of baſe eſtates, to entermeddle with the actions of
perſons priuiledged, and ſacred: But to permit a
ſtragglng vp-ſtart thus afore my owne ſubiects,
the King in preſence, in my Court, and to my face,
to diſtaine my honour, which neuer was impea-
ched? I may not, I will not, I cannot abide it,
though my pleaſure maintained a fault indeed.

A fault (replied *Montanus*) by *Marpesias* Al-
tar ſuch a fault, that vnleſſe you determine other-
wiſe, then to affright the peereleſſe *Deltona*; it is
not menaces, or titular dignities, ſhall keepe re-
uenge from ſending her miniſters amongit you;

T

or

Trebizond.

or make me subiect (against vertue) to imperious will.

The King *Zalby* was much moued at this, but *Rugio* more; as suspecting a purposed neglect of dutie: yet perceiuing a setled countenance, and vndeuided speeches to conclude the rebuke, they knew not how to interpret it; considering the partie reputed an inferiour amongst them: at last they called *Coranus*, who more fearefull to oppose against the Duke, then firme in expectation of *Montanus*, told them of his shipwracke at Seas *Placandus* entertainment; his loue to *Deltona*, the Contract at the Caue, and in a sparing manner, how he promised her to discouer a further secret: which wrought thus much, that the King fore-saw there might be cause of affliction; and he seemed likely to be of better account, by which reason the Duke was pacified, and *Montanus* moderated his forwardnesse: but who had scene *Egerius* behold him in this extasie pleading for *Deltona*, would haue sworn he had bene contemplating some Prodigie: presently *Philano* aduanced himselfe, and asking *Egerius* what troubled him, bade him withall tell his opinion of *Montanus*. Truly (sayd *Egerius*) accidents of admiration chance in the world, and men are subiect to high direction, so that it must needs fall out, that hee hath bene ouerburdened with extremitie, and is sure of better desert then the outward habite or appearance, which hee the rather allowed, because by his owne example

he.

Trebizond.

hee might imagine as vnlikely possibilities to come to passe. Well sayd *Philano*, ere wee haue done, I beleene, wee shall haue much to doe; for as yet we are in the midst of a confusion, and ignorance tryumphes she hath, and must make vs astonished. But the Duke (loth that a time of mirth and entertainment should bee out faced with trouble and dismay) dismissed them awhile, euery man to his owne course, and imployed himselfe to honor the King with entertainment befitting; whereupon a solemne hunting invited him to varietie of pastime, and no man was wanting, whom place or pleasure induced to attend: and as you see a cunningemie obscure himselfe in some remote place of aduantage, when hee apprehendeth a stronger force is comming against him: So played the Inhabitants of these woods, after they vnderstood how they were besieged; till suspecting the ill successe of a tryall, they tooke aduantage to escape, little thinking that their steppes betrayed them, and gaue notice to the aduersarie of their beeing; who by this time discrying their flight, shooted for ioy, as if already victory had administered both renowne and reward: in the end, least delay might breed disaduantage, the Houndes (with the addition of their Masters policie in laying of Toiles, and orderly following the execution) quickly ouer-tooke them in the Retreat, and them subiected to a turious slaughter. But the Officers loth to make too tyrannous a spoyle,

T 2

founded

founded the rechaite, so the rest at randome were assured of more rest; yet tested not the Duke, till he conducted the King in to a gallant Arbour, so cunningly handied, that a man might haue said the demer determined to grace the walkes of the Pallace with a worke of specialtie, and set forth his owne praises, as if he were by it to commend himselfe; for who could but aske his name to know him, and extoll him once knowne.

Here was a roiall Banquet prepared, and an after time of Counsell (soring with the conuenience of the place) concluded, that *Bertofus* should end the Story of *Mengrelus*; who as willing to be disburdened of hir owne feares, as they seemed to be acquainted with others fortune, sent for *Montanus* to come within hearing, and thus began.

Bertofus proceeded in the story of Mengrelus.

After *Gellida* and *Perinthum* had taken notice, of our solitary life, knowing we retyred our selues in the fulnesse of a good opinion, least the deceiuing vanities of the world might endanger or entrappe vs, they committed the Infants vnto our charge; not without some circumstances of the perill in the discouerie, the feare of both the *Emperors*, the troubles depending, and their owne reuerent care toward them, as if the hope of any Kingdomes lay heavy either vpon our diligence or negligence. Thus were wee much esteemed for the resort of the Kings daughters.

ters vnto vs, who indeede often visited, and as often rewarded vs; so that wee had caule to be carefull, as well for their sakes that commanded, as theirs wee had in custodie: this wee performed with reasonable successe. For the time of Nursing ouer-passed, the Princes seemed to scorne their Infancie by entertaining a third year, to which they posted with such a gallantnesse, as if indeede they had knowne with iudgement to haue welcommed all gallantnesse. But (most Noble King and Duke) looke how a suddaine storme is so much the more terrible to a well burdened Barke, by how much it is in iollitie of a good beginning, and almost in sight of safe harbour; so was the pride of our hopes rebuked; and when wee least suspected alteration in such a kinde, there happened a most vnkinde alteration. For as my brother and I solaced the Princes in the walkes of a pretty Groue, where on the handy worke of man had bestowed addition, and stood playing the wantons with conceit of their towardnesse, who by this time seemed the Heauens charge; as well as our charge; comes the Arch-pirate *Cleonidas*, and altering the manner (though not the profession) hurried vs together toward the Hauens, where his ships lay at Anchor.

With that *Montanus* in suddaine motion interrupted his speech; & hearing the name of *Cleonidas* pronounced, cried out: O Eternall Powers!

„ hath *Cleonidas* been an Actor in this Tragedie, and
 „ do I liue to heare so odious a sound to my senses?
 „ Or shall I liue to thanke the gracious *Nemesis* for
 „ his destruction? Or may I liue to reuenge my dis-
 „ graces: if the *Ocean* haue scorned to bee poisoned
 „ with his carcas? O *Princes*! pardon my impati-
 „ ence: this is the head from whence my affliction
 „ springs, and runneth into a strong channell of dis-
 „ quiet: this is the roote supporting a stocke of mise-
 „ rie, and spreadeth into branches of all unhappi-
 „ ness to shade my happinesse: this is the author of
 „ such immanitie, as my tongue trembleth to report
 „ it; though he seemed raised from the deepest hell
 „ to put it in practise. As he was setting forward this
 „ inuention, King *Zalby* perceiuing hee had awaked
 „ some conceit of importance, rose vp with a milde
 „ intent of pacification (least in counterchecking the
 „ humour, it might either grow to violence, or ex-
 „ asperate his discontent) and thus perswaded him:
 „ Princely *Montanus*, We are not so incredulous of
 „ those infinite accidentes, which are directed by
 „ highest influence, as to oppose against your desert;
 „ but lay the fault of our slight respect vpon igno-
 „ rance, and permit *Bertosus* to goe forward: then
 „ by a Kings protestations, I sweare, your desires
 „ shall not range to such a scope, but wee will bring
 „ them within limitation; and if neede requireth,
 „ with a royall consent asist your desires. By this
 „ time had discretion wonne the field, and *Mon-*
 „ *tanus* seemed halfe ashamed, yet loth to make any
 „ demisse

„ demisse appearance, hee thus replyed: Vertue
 „ (great King) I see will be like a square Die, euery
 „ way cast standing vpright: your wisdom hath
 „ ouer-ballanced my distemperature, and in a man-
 „ ner recovered my despaire, I will therefore fasten
 „ my anchor on the holde of your honourable pro-
 „ mises, and attend more chearefully the discourse:
 „ with that he sate downe, and *Bertosus* proceeded.

Cleonidas hauing ranged farre from his shippes,
 ouer-tooke vs thus accompanied, and as wee
 thought to rudely, questioned our names, estates,
 and dwelling; wee supposing the reuerence of our
 King would haue made our peace, and the respect
 to the Princely Infants assured our libertie, boldly
 made answer, whatsoeuer you be, or intend; We
 are the Kings seruants, and these be the Kings chil-
 dren, and you and these (quoth one amongst the
 rest) be now prisoners to *Cleonidas*, and so shall re-
 maine, til the tyrannous *Perinobum* redeeme them
 with the price of her honour; by this time wee
 vnderstood enough, and more then was plea-
 sing (vnlesse you may imagine an offender stan-
 ding before a seuerer Iudge, vrging his fault to as
 cruell a Iurie, and after their verdict giuing sen-
 tence of death, pleased with the same) For *Cleoni-*
das we knew, and his despight wee knew, and the
 cause of *Cleonidas* despight we knew flowed from
 the current of this venemous streame.

Artabazes

Trebizond.

The story of
Parcus and
Menedemus.

Artabazes was no sooner inuested with the royalties of *Armenia*, but *Cleonidas* taking his banishment in disgrace exprobrated his simplicitie, that had not more iudicially proceeded wherupon (as hee supposed, to recouer his credit, rather then for any mallice to the King) he attempted a second innouation, but herein his will exceeded his fortune: for the valliant *Pelorus Artabazes* Admirall, ere he once set foot on land discomfited him at sea; and enforced his reculing to the dry *Iland*: where *Cleonidas* tooke a newe course of life both by Piracie, whereby hee gathered infinite wealth, and mercenary assisting other *Princes*, which obtained him many friends. In the time of this wanton life, on the borders of *Capadocia* was resident as Prouincial Gouvernor *Praxus*, a *Gent.* of an ancient house and great estate, had not the crueltie of the warres waited the same; but now somewhat refetled by his owne endcauours and policie, and in reasonable good grace with the king *Opacus* for his seruice; hee thought vpon nothing so much as the addition of Honour to his house: but apprehending a kinde of error in the kings wants, who was counted to exchange fauour for money, and vnwilling to giue him cause of distast, considering that aduancements depend on the pleasure of the *Princes*; hee conferred with his friends about the king, and such whom seruice at Court had especially graced: so that perceiuing the

Trebizond.

the vse of their fauour, he compared himselfe to a man ready for entrance in to some pleasant Gallery, wherof he had the right, but another kept the Key: at last reason, reward, or his owne worth preuailed with them, & they inferred to the King the necessitie of the gouernment, the desert of the *Gent.* not without addition, how hee had lost his Goodes, spent his Reuenues, and hazzarded his Life: thus was the King prepared. Then proceeded they further by putting him in memorie, how the Vertuous expect a Recompence, as well as the Wicked deserue Punishment: And lastly, as the string, which yeelded the sweete sound of the Musicke, they touched this, that a present summe of Mony and yearly Reuenues, would come into the Treasurie. I will not say it preuayled; but the King most graciously ennobled him with the title of *Exarchate*, and constituted him Gouvernour during life, according to the Lawes of the Land; wherevpon now the Lord *Praxus* was enforced to try *Menedemus* for a competent portion of money to defray his charges, that the entrance into his new Honour in good fashion might establish the opinion of the people by applauding his worth. This was a wretch liuing in the strength and delicatest place of all the Kingdome; and had culled out the sweetest dwellings, and peeces of Land to make his Inheritance sufficient, like a skilfull Marchant who determining to iourney into a strange Country, and con-

Trebizond.

„ triuing to returne with credite and gaine, search-
 „ eth euery Shoppe of a Citie, and selected the best
 „ Peeces, the curioustest Stuffe, the choysest Dellicats,
 „ and what els he needeth to serue his turne: Yet
 for all this was the threed of his life drawne from
 such a minde as seemed made of filth and durt,
 and the very dregges of Miseric: For abroad his
 complaints were of the ill thriuing of his Cattle,
 the vntoward growth of his Corne, the ill payment
 of the Tenants, the want of Money; when yet it
 was well knowne, hee had alwayes great summes
 lying by him; so that the bad vse of Natures bles-
 sings, made him want indeed; and that wilde dispo-
 sition, wrought him odious to Man, hateful to
 God, and irkesome to himselfe: Within dores
 the Seruants were negligent, the Wife too lauish,
 the Children too importunate, the Strangers too
 cumberfome, the Kindred and Friendes bent to
 vndoe him: Besides, hee was accompanied with
 these ill Conditions, ridiculous Pride to make
 men imagine, this basenesse the meanes to haue
 him selfe glorified; heart-vexing Enuie to see any
 thriue by him, or possesse their estates in good or-
 der: Impudent delight to heare of an others Ouer-
 throw, or Decay; and inhumane crueltie, if the er-
 rour or inconueniences of life draue men into his
 danger: But to see him about his owne house ac-
 companied with Pefants all ill apparelled, as him-
 selfe sweaty, greasy, dusty nasty, and what-els ma-
 keth a man odious, would shew a very comicall
 Tragedy.

Trebizond.

Tragedy: And if necessitie wrested the disbur-
 sing of some small summes, hee would excruciate
 him selfe; but when the State compelled his ac-
 cess, what cursings, what execrations, what tor-
 ments? yet goe he must, and in such a manner, as
 I cannot with patience describe it; him selfe like a
 Pedler with foule Linnen, beastly Garments,
 parcht, seamerent, and greasie, and worse then a
 Slaue: His men brought to his owne bent, Car-
 ters, Ploughmen, Shepheards, and such as were
 employed in the greatest drudgerie: His Horle
 and Furniture part old, broken, and foule; part
 such as hee vsed in his businesse, and part pawned,
 forsayted, or bought at second hand: Onely this
 I must needs say, some things of his Ancestors
 he vsed in sparing manner, which were good, and
 made the rest more ridiculous.

With such a fellow was *Praxus* to deale with-
 all, and had so many delayes, such excuses, such
 forefearings, yea teares from his eyes flowing
 from an hypocritical heart, that he knew not whe-
 ther to laugh, or to be angry: at last vpon sufficient
 securitie of a Mortgage; a Lordship, on which hee
 had long since cast his eyes for his younger Sonne,
 like him that ouerlooketh a flocke of Sheepe to
 see which be ready for the Butcher, or to enrich
 his Purse; the Money was lent, and *Menedemus*
 tormented him selfe, not so much for feare of the
 securitie, as to depart from the company of his
 Treasure. Now betwene the time of repayment,

Trebizond.

Menedemus had brought to his house the beautiful *Lausana*, a Ladyes daughter left in ward to the King, and by this Monster of Nature bought out, more to make benefite of, then for loue to his sonne, or any other, whom her owne worth without addition, might well satisfie. With her did *L. Praxus* fall in loue; and seeing the forwardnes of so many Graces in so gracious a person, assured him selfe, they could not chuse but grow vp to the becomming of the place wherein they were sette, and bring all wealth, happinesse, and contentment to him whose fortune had allotted the Haruest; but perceiving the difficulty of obtaining her, by reason of *Menedemus* bad disposition & ielousie, and that he was already engaged, and within his danger, (as you haue heard) he knew not well how to proceed; at last he contriued not to pay his Money, and by a little stretching his Authoritie, sent a band of Souldiers to keepe possession of the Place; all which, he said, was for the wretches good, because if he would consent to the Contract of *Lausana*, he might at one payment receiue the Mony borrowed, and what he had disbursed for her Wardship; otherwise he would inferre to the King and Counsell, the complaints against him, the mischiefs he had procured, and some other enforcements, which would ouerthrow him for euer. Heere was *Menedemus* in an extasie, hauing so many Crosses, (as hee termed them) to be cleared of, as to be utterly vndone for want of his Money,

to

Trebizond.

to be vexed in soule with the feare of this accusation, and to be put to greater charge in contesting with the gouerner: but the secret of this terror depended on a priuate commaund from the king not to celebrate *Lausana* as mariage without his consent; nor to yeeld to any contract to another vlicensed from the state: This he told *Praxus* with a strange kinde of rembling, that he hoped he would not seeke his ouer-throw, nor put him to trouble in recovering his owne: but *Praxus* by faire intreatie not to suspect displeasure, considering she should rather be aduanced then disparaged, wonne him to thinke well of the Maryage, and by engaging his Honour to see him secured or otherwise not dammed, made some return of comfort, but indeed the absolute deniall of his Money, vnlesse he consented to this course, enforced him at last to forget dutie and honestie; and so with a chearfulnesse in the receipt thereof, hee deliuered *Lausana* to *Praxus*: for which, hee gratified the wretch beyonde expectation. Thus, either returned; *Menedemus* to his miserable life, and *Praxus* to solemaise the Triumph of his delight: wherein without doubt (if hee had proceeded with the Kings fauour) a happie contentment had been the reward of counterchangeable worth, and liking.

By this time is *Opacus* acquainted with each circumstance, wherupon he summoned both *Praxus* and *Menedemus* to appeare at *Archelais*, which

Trebizond.

Praxus would haue done, had not the other for feare of expences absolutely denied it, and putting him in minde of his promises, and how for his sake these dangers were threatened, detraacted the time so long, that *Opacus* stomaching the contempt proclaimed them both Traitors, their goods and Landes to be confiscate, & their persons infamous and subiect to the Law: this newes had almost made cowardise the seruant of Valure. For *Menedemus* would haue kild himselfe, or rather hanged himselfe, least he should haue seene his one blood, had not *Praxus* awaked his drowfinesse with warrantice and comforte, that rather then for so slight offence extremity should open the gates of cruelty; *Curatsax* King of *Iberia* (to whom *Praxus* was of alliance, would not suffer him without cause to perish: this made them stand on their guard, and exasperated the kings displeasure, who came forward in person to repress the insolency, whereby *Praxus* was enforced indeed to expostulate the matter and after true intimation of the cause, and the kings extremitie, drew *Curatsax* with a sufficient Armie as auxiliary: so a ciuell warre (which more and more like a new kindled fier suffered to waite the woode by degrees) burst forth at last with flames of dispiht and desolation, especially to *Capodocia*, wherin it continued and began, and *Opacus* was constrained to higher *Cleonidas*, who at this time kept about the River *Cirus*, and when he list to come vp into the Country carried his

Trebizond.

his Boates on Camelles backes ouer the Mountaines, leauing his shippes sufficiently conducted and secured, with his ayde and the death of *Menedemus*, (who in a time of Truce would needes goe see his Land, and in what estate his inheritance stood, but was intercepted by certaine of *Cleonidas* new Soldiers, to whom his owne Tenants had betrayed him, and so submitted to their fury, was the Warres ended, *Praxus* restored to the kings fauour, and the King of *Iberia* dismissed.

THIS businesse thus ouerpassed *Opacus* inuited *Cleonidas* to the Pallace, as well to gratefie his vertue, as to pay his Soldiers: heere had he sight and conference with *Perinthum* the Kings second daughter, and whether the opinion of his owne worth, or the vnfained affection vnto her, induced; in very good manner he demaunded her loue, had not loue commaunded the contrary, which at the first was taken as a coustome amongst womē, till a continuall repugnancy both in speech & action shewed rather a scorne, then neglect of his suite: this agrauated his greife, but not extenuated his passiō, becaule questionlesse subiect to her perfection, and now debarred from the thinge he desired, he resembled a man in a continuall feuer, still longing for what he is forbidden, and loathing what is prescribed: At last rather enflamed, then enamored, he vrged *Opacus* consent, who to be plain neither

*The story of
Cleonidas
and Perin-
thum.*

ther

Trebizond.

“ther durst deny, nor would accord: resembling a
 “man holding the Woölfe by the care, which if he
 “hold fast he is sure to be bitten, if he let loose, he
 “is in danger of life: So he feared on the one side
 “*Cleonidas* reuenge in the deniall, and his daughters
 “defamation in the accord: yet seing the necessitie
 of the businesse, and the others importunitie for
 an answer: kindnesse had reciprocall passage be-
 tweene them, and the king tooke time to conferre
 with his daughter.

But *Perinthum* assured her father, that her fault
 con pitched a higher flight, which he not much
 “milked, and therefore to auoyd all inconue-
 “niences sent her with *Gellida*, her other sister
 to attend the *Empres* of *Trebizond*, and enfor-
 med *Cleonidas*, as though their owne wilfulnesse,
 or desier to be acquainted with a place of such re-
 nowne had vndertaken the progresse: To this
 excuse he knew not how to oppose. For finding
Opacus rather wishing a pacification of the displea-
 sure, then countenancing the Vnkindnesse, he
 moderated his Indignation; and so departed, nei-
 ther warranting his loue, nor expressing his hate
 to the Country: Till vnderstanding of the Ladies
 returne, hee practised many meanes to circumuent
 her; and sayling in them, as many forages to dis-
 quiet the Land, which some times with successe
 had outrageous effectes; some times with stronge
 hand, as forcible repulses; till at last, Fortune wil-
 ling to doe him a pleasure, as the Champion of
 her

Trebizond.

her quarrels, brought this prey to his choyse, and
 him to this place at such time, as wee were playing
 with the Princely Infants: so that the action rela-
 ted his pride in vmannerly hastinesse hurrying
 vs away; and thanked Opportunitie, as it should
 seeme, without further questions in vnproper
 cruelty tying vs in bands: For all wee intreated
 with teares, threatned with anger; lamented with
 sighes, anon rayled on their presumption, after of-
 fered sufficient ransome; and last of all, pleaded con-
 science, manhood, and the Law of all Nations.
 The Infants in the meane while, smiling at the vp-
 roare, neither dismayed with the company as
 Strangers, nor action as troublesome: But neither
 intreaties, promises, prayers, offers, threatnings,
 nor exelamations, could preuaile: For with tedi-
 ous Iornies they brought vs to the Sea side, where
 their Shippes lay at anchor; and were ready to at-
 tend the calling of the Winde, who by this time,
 began to chide our negligence, that was not thank-
 full to so kind putting vs in minde of our businesse:
 onely wee expected the comming backe of the
 Captaine; whom *Cleonidas* had sent to certifie
Opacus of the accident.

But when his returne assured an illusion, and
 that the king disclaimed any right to the infants,
 warranting withall the fiction, but a device to
 set our selues at libertie: neuer was so fit a time to
 pattern out wrath and fury, as in *Cleonidas* whose
 eies glistered like Fier, and impatience scarce for-

Trebizond.

bore with his owne hands to teare vs a peeces, commanding vs to be tortured for deluding him; which as a villaine was forward to execute foure great *Quinquiremes* scowred first by vs, and after winded about, as if they meant with aduantage to set vpon vs: Which when *Cleonidas* had beheld with the eyes of aduice, and perceiuing they were but Messengers of some mischiefe following, (for by this time hee had descried the whole Fleete,) we were a while forgotten, and hee (to our amaze) proceeded with such courage and iudgement, that in applying the like to generous performances, hee might haue prooued a sufficient member of a politicall body: for the Souldiers were placed each one in a congruent distance, least shuffled together, might haue bred a confusion: The Fire-works were prepared, the Fights were ouerseene, enclosed, and well flanked; the Weapons were considered on either to skirmish a farre off, or to grapple, if need required; and the vnable and insufficient, were separated into some remote corner from troubling the rest: Amongst whom, was our account cast; yet some honorable concite vnwilling to be tyrannous against Infants, and men valikly to be preiudiciall, remitted vs from bands, and embarked vs into a very good brigandine to be transported to the *Dry Island*: where the strength and conueniencie of the place both secured, and contented him, when he list to make his retreat.

Thus

Trebizond.

Thus were we parted from the company of *The Ship-* death and danger; for *Cleonidas* presently *wracke of* made toward the Gallies, but (Most mighty Prince) how the wrathfull *Nemesis*, or his fortunate *Coranus and Bertofus* *Genius* determined of him I know not, because, *with the Emperors children, who are here discovered to be Egerius & Deltona:* vntill this occasion, his name was neuer once a subject to talke of, though his wretchednesse yeelded many times sufficient matter to thinke on. *But by their proper names: Trezoboro & Brizaca.* But wee kept a steady passage to our Harbour, and had cause of comfort, when the trauell of foure dayes brought vs within the sight of the Island: Yet looke how a sparke of Fire euen at the very present of his taking leaue of the heate giueth the greater light; so wee gaue a sodaine shoot of ioy, with a Swanlike dittie, at the instant of our destruction: For on a sodaine, a North-west winde whirled the Barke about, and though the Mariners endeavored the contrary, wee as quickly lost, as enioyed the former delight: Then followed a Storme, which with continuance vnited to the Winde, raised a dangerous Tempest: last of all, approached a second Darknesse, wherein the night drew her Curtaines to hide vs from the face of Heauen, had not the contention in those vpper Regions giuen vs more light, then wee wished, because bringing terrour with the Thunder, wee neither durst behold either Earth, or Heauen. On the other side, the Sea hearing the bigg voyce of the Windes, awaked her sluggishnesse, and perceiving

X.

Trebizond.

perceiuing such variance betwixt the Fire & Aire for superioritie, would not imbrace her selfe, but thought to make her greatnesse appeare, as well as they; and so swelled beyond measure, growing to that rage, that wee thought it better to be subiect to Men, then implacable Waues.

This continued a whole day and night, and the continuance wrought effect to put vs in minde of our frailtie, and to make preperation for another dwelling, because the Barcke vnable to house vs, was willing to dislodge vs; and we likewise grew weary of being such Tenants, especially my poore Brother and I, who seemed dying, before death; and ten times dying, to behold the sweete Infants cling to vs for succour, who were not able to helpe our selues: Yet at last Nature preuayling against Wilfulnesse, wee determined to tarry for, rather then to runne to so bad a friend as Death, and therefore agreed to striue with Redresse, if wee could, and to tie the Children to our backs, concluding to change their Names what euer chaunced; and withall, changed our Places, setting our selues neere to some strong Planckes, and Chestes: So, by that time our *Genius* assured the splitting of the Shippe, I was safe in this vulasetic on a seasoned Truncke of Firre, and my Brother on a spare Mast; both which, floated for a while neere the dismembred Barke, like silly Birdes heuering about their Mother entrapped in a Nette, and leaue her not, till the Fawknere assure, hee is the messenger

Trebizond.

messenger of death. What should I say (most mightie King) the feare was more then the danger; and yet may the greatest scorner of Perils, confesse the danger exceeded any meanes, which humaine pollicie had to auoyde it, considering our burdens, and combersome company, which did rather augment, then diminish our griefe. For alas, to be in haſlard of drowning amidst the cruell Billowes, desperat of succour, on vnfirm scates, and with infant Princes tyed to our backs, who can but thinke wee had sorrow sufficient, and suppose our heauinesse a wonderfull temptation: At length we seemed cheared with a life cast in a new mold by perceiuing faire weather approaching, resembling a condemned person meditating with repentance, and sadly casting his lookes on the ground, as not daring to lift them vp to heauen, till the sound of a Pardon infuseth strength and courage into his decayed soule: whereupon wee settled vp our selues, and began to appease the Children, who as if they meant to finde fault with Fortunes discourtesie, exclaymed on her vnkindnesse by pleading their owne innocencie; which whether it were with the inforcement penetrable, or that the Gods meant to shew their power in contrarieties (I dare not verdict) but presently to our amaze, & their pacification, a gallant calme succeeded, and the outward face of heauen suffered her blacknes to be wiped away, whereby it appeared like the milde mother of the earth; so that it was my good happe

Trebizond.

to driue vnder the Walles of *Fortona*, where a Fisher stood drying his Nettes, whom as I learnt afterwad, was the old *Piscaro*; and as I had cause to acknowledge, was the honest *Piscaro*: For seeing some strange thing floating a farre off, hee watched to helpe, if hee could; and graciously helped when hee could: So my lifetie increased with his comfort; in which loth to appeare defectiue, hee had me presenty to his House, confirming his Charitie by his good Workes.

Bertosus: suffering shipwracke is taken up by Piscarro & Persia, nameth Trezoboro Egeus. **N**OW when hee presumed on my strength, hee questioned with mee about my Shipwracke; and to be plaine, I made a round excuse, as though *Cleonidas* had set fire on my poore dwelling in *Piscarro & Persia*, and caried mee Prisoner to his *Iland*, till a tempest deuided vs, and sent mee floating, as hee found. I but (quoth *Piscarro*) would a Pirate permit you so much leasure to tie your Child to your backe, and giue you libertie to make such shift? Questionlesse (replied I) you haue made a pretty doubt; yet must the truth thus resolue you, and fauour him, that out of furie, hee is most pittifull, and worthy of a good report. This was the excuse I made, and with this excuse was my peace made; so that I remayned with him a while rather willing to please, then to complaine of my owne discontentment: but when he found my endeouours conforing to his disposition, as though I ment to checke ingratitude, hee professed a further liking,

Trebizond.

liking, and very suddenly imparted his wealth vnto me: to be breife with him I continued some fise yeeres not forgetting the bringing vp of my sonne, who seemed of that forwardnesse (as quickly learning and gracing whatsoeuer he learnt) that my contentment sprang from his expectation: but this manner of life did not long last, because *Piscarro*, lasted not himselfe, as summoned to a stricter tryall by the irreuocable sentence of death: and preparing for another world made an oueraffection adopt me his heyre in this world, & left a stranger to be subiect vnto their mallice, that saw me possessed of his wealth, which though it amounted to no great matter, yet I compassed the dwelling I now enioy, and was able to bring vp *Egerius*, as you all can partly witnesse: But seeing the winges of time haue thus spread out themselues, and the booke of heauenly reuolutions turneth to this leafe, let not vs degenerat with dulnesse or wilfulnesse, but take out a new lesson, and with reuerence acknowledge him the *Emperor Mengrelins Sonne*, and remember his true name to be *Princely Trezoboro*: For this is he, whom *Gellida* and *Perinshum* gaue me such charge of.

But say *Coranus* (quoth King *Zalby*) after *Bertosus* was thus vnkindly seperated from you, what fauour found you amongst the tossing furies? Not much vnlke my brother (replied *Coranus*) onely in being thus deuided my sorrow the rather encreased, and I seemed to lament his losse, as much

Trebizond.

much as suspect my owne danger: Now belike mischief wery of her owne handyworke gaue liberty to an other sceane to alter the act. For within two houres after, the calme presented it selfe, I kenned a farre off a Fisher boate; who conceiuing of our extremitie made as much hast as my tongue did require their hast: thus was I saved, and by their industry recovered, the old *Selenus* one of the Shepheards of the Downes commanding it should be so, and I was glad to finde it so; but more glad, when he brought vs home to his House, where with louing care; and sufficient meanes, wee had the comfortable effectes of good diligence, and honest looking vnto. But when I told him I was a man of Husbandry in *Armenia*, and was taken in a Passage-Boate by the Pirate *Cleonidas*, as I was traueling into *Media* to an elder Daughter there bestowed, with this Child, hee much pittied my distresse: But when I tolde him, seeing Fortune was so crosse vnto me (& pouertie must needes prooue comber some, and the discoverer of imperfections) I would take any paines in an other Country to helpe my wants, rather then be a scandall to my selfe, a laughing stocke to my Enemies, & a scorne to my Friends; or at least such, as in former time professed so; hee liked mee as a man of sence, and added somewhat of his owne opinion. But when I told him, that the bond of his Kindnesse had tyed mee to the strict obseruation of Satisfaction; and that I offered

Trebizond.

offered him the fruit of my endeuors in his seruice, he tooke it in good part, made tryall of my industry, and welcommed me accordingly.

There I remained vntill *Deltona* (for so I named *Brizaca*) was able to apprehend my instructions, and loth to let her loose the benefit of this towardlynesse I obtained of *Selenus* a Cottage by my selfe, wherein we liued, till she in her life florished, and I in her florishing prospered: For as if the graces had doated on her, each action she attempted was gracious, and I (as if fortune ment to turne her Wheele indeed,) in euery thing had good success: in so much that with the admiration of her beautie & gallant behaiour *Deltona* obtained the chiefe place at the feast: & with regard of the companie, and my owne good vsage, the poore *Coranus* held the reputation you found him in: therefore (most Noble Duke) looke on her now with other eyes: for no longer *Deltona*, but the *Emperor Mengrelus* daughter; *Brizaca*.

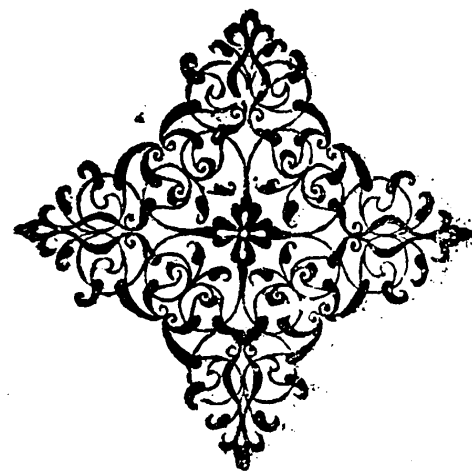
By that time *Coranus* concluded his discourse, a generall muttering was heard, and raised a manner of confusion amongst them, wherein we will leaue them, till the extasie haue end: and as they begin to conferre of the strangnesse, shall the time acquaint you with the story.

Finis Libri Secundi.

X.

Coranus suffering shipwracke is taken up by Selenus and nameth Brizaca Deltona.

THE
THIRD BOOKE
 of the Historie
 OF
TREBIZOND.



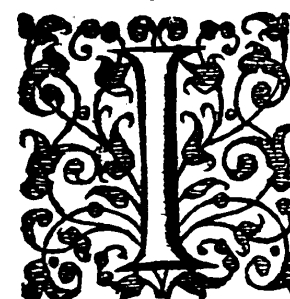
Imprinted at London by W. White,
 for T. Downes and E. Dawson.

1616.



To the honorable Lady
FRANCIS EGERTON.

HONORABLE LADY,



Could flourish the colours of
your Prayes from Vertue,
Beautie, Gracefulnesse, Mag-
nanimitie, and such like en-
riching gistes of Nature: But
at this time I will extend your
worth no further, then that
you are a faire promising
Fruite of a glorious Tree; and so haue chosen you with
the rest, to ouer-shade mee from the tempestes of De-
traction, considering I am now like a ceed Donc to flye
abroad with strange disguises, and haue as it were ma-
triculated my selfe in the Schoole of Folly, by writing
of Bookes: Yet if you will relieue it, as a poore cast-out
Orphan, then are you charitable: If you entertaine
it for any cause in it selfe, then doe you Iustice: If you
pardon the faults, then are you Vertuous: If you pro-
tect it, then are you Heroicall: Nay, if you make it
contemptible, I shall impute it to my owne ill deser-

The Epistle.

166. *ning, not any deficiency in you. But casting these doubts aside, I am confident, that you will either give me leave to make use of your Honorable supportations on life me up your selfe with so strong an arme, that neither Envy nor Derision of others, shall shoulder me aside from your acceptation; or come neere you, that are willing to be so gentle and gracefull unto mee;*

Your Honors to command,

Th. Gainsforde.



The Third Booke of the
Historie of TREBIZOND.

THe truth had no sooner *Deltonathus* triumphed in *Deltonas* discovery, but seemed impatient at restraint, and therefore *Montanus*: commaunderd fame to divulge it abroad: yet who had *but confesse* her loue. at this instant beheld her, would haue sworne shee ment to participate to some excellent artist a very patterne of modesty and humilitie rather then state and magnificence: For there neither appeared alteration, nor any new countenance; only that which seemed new, was a manner of scorne to thinke, how a vaine titell should produce such regard before vertue and desert: Neither would she haue admitted those ceremonies, had not *Ege-* *rius* now her brother *Trezabore* perswaded, that though a diamond (howsoeuer set forth) is still pretious, and a stone of estimation: yet arteficially polished maketh apparant a greater lustre, and augmenteth the vallue and sufficiencie: So no doubt vertue & beautie in *Deltona Coranus* Child, were giustes of singular delight and account, but in *Brizaca* the *Emperor* *Mcugrelius* daughter, they were perfections and excellencies of admiration: thus she was contented to dismiss her for-

Y 4 mer

Trebizond.

mer stilnesse & feare & appeared, as if maiestie had framed a worke of ostentation, which made the king, *Duke*, and the rest, burden ignorance with the error of their slight respect, and desired her to pardon the former negligence: to this she was soone directed, and by her excellent behaviour, gaue notice of all those additions, which make *Princes* famous to their eternall renowne.

In the time of this celebration, *Montanus* seemed forgotten: For euery one busied themselves with the matter in hand. The king to gratefie *Rugio* to purchase attonement, *Trezoboro* to acknowledge a Sister, *Philano* to honour his friend, *Coranus* in recounting of secrets, and *Bertosus* in discovering of circumstances: so that *Montanus* too curiously stomaching the operation of ioy extended altogether toward another, entertained an vnkind suspicion of her neglect, which made him retyre to *Bertosus* house, where his meditation was quickly welcomed to Ielosy and misdoubt, had not *Coranus* brought him tidings of better consequence vpon this occasion.

Brizaca setled in glorious alteration, began to ransacke the Closet of affection, and found the remembrance of *Montanus* mourning, that there seemed neede of a new search, which made her challenge the company for his losse: as if she ment to giue them notice, that on his fastie depended her chiefeft content. Now was a new hurliburly in the Pallace, and a new humor in the *Duke*, they
busied.

Trebizond.

busied in the execution of her pleasure, and hoping to finde a concurrent in his loue: For if before her Comlinesse and Beautie had withdrawn Power from an incontinent libertie, now her Greatnesse and Maiestie rather inflamed, then enamored; which suggested emulation against *Montanus*, and might haue nourished those despights encreasing betweene riuals, had not the presence of *Brizaca* caused the returne of better consideration, and her last denial assured shee was engaged with the bond of Fayth toward him.

Thus was *Rugio* imperiously ruled, and for her pleasure displeasingly pleased: so he sent *Coranus* and *Bertosus* abroad, who comming home, found *Montanus* in a manner ouercharged with griefe. Why how now (quoth *Bertosus*,) is this the conquerour of Misfortune? and terrour of Licentiousnesse? Did you exclaime against *Rugio*, to our amase, and disquiet the King with your heroyicke reprehention? Is *Brizaca* lesse regarded an Emperours Daughter, then when shee was *Deliona*, the reputed Child of *Coranus*? Where is Courage and Magnanimitie? Where is Hope and Resolution? Where is Loue and Delight? See Loue, (replied *Montanus*) but little Delight: For what goodnesse can I expect, when at the very first, Disdaine and Contempt proceeded against mee? no man more deseruing, no man lesse regarded. Tush (answered *Bertosus*) Imagination is the mother
Z. ther

ther of Trouble; let me therefore bring these glad tidings, that how-euer the strangeness wrought in vs, and extasy was effectually in them; yet is *Brizaca* honourable, constant, and resolute toward you. Toward mee (quoth *Montanus*) how can a Shepheard bee remembered amongst Princes? Truly (sayd *Coranus*) if I may speake without offence, ouer-liberally credulous of your Promise, shee reprehended mee for your absence, and sware shee would forget her new name, if it should be an obstacle to her desires. Well (said *Montanus*) I allow of the deceit, and am content to checke my suspicion: I request you therefore like men, let vs belecue the Gods remaine vncontroulable; and like friendes, suffer mee to make this vse of your kindnesse, to certifie *Deltona* (for as yet I dare not name *Brizaca*) that my life and loue dependeth on her respect; whereon I will aduance the trophies of Honour, when that sleeping Fame shall awake to tell her, *Montanus* is no lesse then a Monarch: In the meane while, I present her my Heart; but must absent my Bodily presence. Nay, reply not? For Heauen concludeth, my *Genius* perswadeth, and I am vnchangeable. With that, hee hastened out of the Cittie, and left them to maruell at the wilfulness.

Montanus
departeth
from Forto-
na

Thus they returned to the Court, assuring the Duke hee was not to be found: But imparting to *Brizaca* the matter as it chanced, and the manner, as the circumstances effected; in commending with;

withall his care (exceeding all other care) to be restored to the possession of happiness: This somewhat settled her feare, and yet troubled her opinion, considering she could not apprehend, whither hee should goe, vnlesse to *Placandus*. In the meane while, *TreZoboro* and the Duke, concluded to proclaime their discouerie in all the Kingdomes adioyning; which *Rugio* consented vnto, as well to make his endeauours plead his affection and desert to *Brizaca*, as to amplifie his renowne both abroad and at home: wherevpon many Messengers assured diuers Princes, that truth and strangeness had sent them; and they according to the nature desiring nouelties, by Commission or rather Warrants of safe conduct came to *Fortona*, ere the limited time had fully spread her winges, and were welcommed accordingly: so that such as professed in chivalrie, made their cost rather extend to necessitie then wantonnesse; and such as had their Fancies tyed to other subiectes, seemed doubly charged, to make a mixture of armes and delight; but when the day approached, wherein glory determined a solemne inauguration, the intercourse of people gaue notice, as if they went to the Pallace of Honour, and the Duke added to his greatnesse and euermlasting fame, both by his demeanour and expences. In this manner proceeded the Triumph, and the Iudges of the Field were conducted to an imperiall Tent, equally deuiding the Listes, which were King *Zalby*: *Orcanus*

Lord of the Blew-Ilands: and *Nestorius* Prince of *Oxidracan*: the Ladyes discharging their nicetie, were as ready as the multitude, and the Knights came triumphantly forward: Amongst whom the defendants shall receiue this sparing commendation, that their outward brauery and gallantnesse, made the beholders suppose it sumptuous, and the person ynknowne, was worthily liked for his honourable minde and good intent: As for the Challengers (how euer some censor doe except against the time, which had not yet ripened inuention) they may not so slightly overpasse my remembrance.

Ligornio heire and hope of *Bactriana* brother in law to *Rugio*, and newly betrothed to the faire *Ramira*, a daughter of *Artaxerxes* Prince of *Susiana*, had his Caparison of a Sea colour fatten, so arteificially embrodered with a tempestuous water deuided into broken waues by the purling of the Silke and Siluer, that the contention arose, whether the cost or the cunning exceeded: for at euery corner of the Quarters, you might descry a Shippe in harbour of safetie. The Mott was: *Tandem*.

Sacromirus sonne of *Hircania*, ware a purple Veluet, all spotted and embrodered with *Panthers*; but so done, as wee well might know, *Hircania* afforded this Beast exceeding other Countries, and hee affected them surpassing other men, as if hee meant to discouer, that looke what property Nature

Nature bestowed vpon them; hee assumed to himselfe. The Mott: *Si saturatus mitis*.

Seleucus heyre of *Margiana*, on a curious Cloth of Siluer had in diuers places a Rocke deciphered, resembling that, which protected the Country from inuasion, and assured; the place it selfe was also impreguable. The Mott: *Hoc cape et regna*.

Beluidas the sonne of *Carmania*; bare a Peach-colour Veluet purled ouer with siluer and gold Wier; but so artificially wrought, that you might perceiue a cut off Head on an Altar, as if hee meant to tell vs, that Loue was there obtained with the price of their enemies Heads The Mott: *Sic amor conquiritur*.

Culanus King of *Sogdiana* hauing marched with the heroyicall *Tarima* Quene of *Saca*, thought no scorne to blazon her excellencies, and therefore on a Watcher Satten embost with Gold had her resemblance portrayted, and himselfe kneeling before her, wherein the chiefe care consisted to decipher, that Beautie and Vallour, had doubly enforced his yeelding vnto her. The Mott: *Non pudet vinci*.

Philano sonne to *Rugio* on an Azure Damaske, bare a resplendant Sun, so excellently embost, that the very Rayes gaue shew of a glorious light; but when we perceiued certaine Cloudes of Silke and Siluer, as it were thrust into a corner, wee then remembered a greater force might put a weaker enemy to retreat. The Mott: *Sic gloria desidiat*.

Trebizond.

Trezoboro on a russet Veluet cut in pierced mascelles vpon azure Persian stufte, had diuers Crownes of Gold-smiths worke; ouer whom an Enameled eye seemed to take the charge. The Mott: *Quis amitter?*

The Duke himselfe ware on an Orenge satten an embrodred Arme, shaking a Sword out of a fiery Cloude, and so wrought, as if it receiued life from a Heart threatning despight. The Mott: *Vindicta.*

Thus passed the Ceremonies of this Triumph; wherein is to be obserued, that Valure and Delight made before-hand a bargaine with Mischaunce, not to enter the Listes, or any way to impeach the Iollitie, being a thing determined for show and pleasure: Yet when it came to execution, the broken Lawnces flew into the ayre, scorning the compasse of a small hold. The Horses wearied with ill managing, disburdened themselves of their vnfortunate Masters. The Knights active in their seuerall encounters, (louing Virtue for her owne sake) desisted not for one repulse; but againe and againe made their tryall: Amongst whom, *Rugio* enforced himselfe beyond expectation (as caryed with a passionate violence toward *BriZaca*;) for though hee had broken fourty Lawnces, and ouerthrowne sixteene Knights; yet scorned hee a surceance, till the fortune of the day confirmed the Prize to his worth: But as his forwardnesse insulted with his merit, a suddaine hurliburly at the West end of the Tilt, exposed

Trebizond.

posed new matter of variety, and came thus to passe.

Montanus went directly to his father *Placandus*, ouer whom seuerall feares and sorrowes for the murder of *Franio*, and the dissipation of his friendes had an vntoward government: but it was quickly deposed by the returne of *Montanus*, who by this time was well commed, as if a traueler hauing left a louing wife in the seuerall mistrustes of a dangerous vioage, past hope of returning presented himselfe by miracle vnto her: which occasioned some ceremony of kindnesse, as well to strengthen the opinion of *Placandus* toward him, as to satisfie his curiosity, which neuer left ouer burdning him with questions: Whereupon he tould the old man of the Dukes stealing *Deltona*, her scorne and *Franios* trechery: he tould the old man, *Coranus* had found a brother, himselfe was entertained with *Bertosus*, and what had chanced concerning *Egerius*: he tould the old man *Mengrelins* story, king *Zalbys* comming to the Court, and *Deltonas* with her brothers discouery: he tould the old man the entertainment, which followed, the embassage concluded on, and the triumph proclaimed, whether he was resolued to goe; which when *Placandus* rather wondred at, then impugned, hee tould the old Man of his misfortunes, the fight with

Trebizond.

with *Cleonidas*, and his right to the kingdome of *Armenia*: To be breefe he tould the old man he was the Prince *Anxitemus*, of his contract at *Mengrelins* Caue, and how *Deltona* remained irremoueable, and vnaltred: of which though the strangenesse slackt his beleefe, yet was the truth so modestly vrged, & the likelyhood of his speeches concurred with such similitude, that *Placandus* reioyced in the hope to find it so, and with a glad some contrariety seemed officious vnto him, as if he knew it was so: But when the next morning rumored the like circumstances, he then obserued all the partes of loue and secrecy, and according to his directions made ready Mony of his Cattell, moueables and such like he possessed, with which *Montanus* furnished him selfe, as conveniently as he could, and at the time appoynted came into the field with a Caparison curiously embost with watchet filke and gold counterchangeably layed vpon the same colour *Persian* stuffe: his deuise a lawrell flourishing vnder a tempestuous Element, the Mote: *Salua tamen*.

Montanus Thus with a seemely Trot he paced to the Tilt, commeth to as if he determined to grace their expectation with a thing of some rarenesse: For the Horse commaunded manifested a scorne of wantonnesse by a stately sobrietie; and he commaunding, managed the beast without any wrested mouinges or enforced restraints: nor was the Duke much discontented with his approach (his courage interpreting

Trebizond.

interpreting it a pollecie of Honour to adde more fethers to the Wings of Fame, because he had already made tryall of as good men at armes as any in *Asia*: yet very loth, that mischance should make a mixture with that dayes glory, he shifted his weary Horse, and tooke him to an old Bay, which rather (as if time had altered the colour) seemed a perfect Chesse-nut, and so supplied the roome againe, attending the sommons of victory.

But when the Ladyes were made acquainted with the noueltie, strange was their desier to know him, strange was their griefe, that none could satisfie their desier: As for the peerlesse *Brizaena*, though she could haue wished him *Montanus*; and withall, remembered the good of *Montanus*: yet not able to thinke, what treasure in a place vknowne, had opened her doores, she desisted from supposing him *Montanus*: But whether, because her minde had runne on *Montanus*, or that the nature of well wishing extendeth to the weaker side; she once againe allowed him *Montanus*; and praied accordingly for the same successe, as if it had beene to *Montanus*; but the Trumpets sound gave warning to put her other senses in practise, and so the first course began, which passed both with liking to the beholders, and astonishment to *Rugio*, because they perceiued a sweeter cleannesse in the diuision, and hee felt a quicker strength in his deliuey: yet knowing

„ conceit was a weakning of courage, and the least
 „ aduantage, deseried a step to Conquest, hee made
 ready againe, and so fūe times together with
 sufficient equality concluded; and might surely
 haue triumphed without impeachment, consi-
 dering the deeds of Armes, with whose applause
 he had filled all mens cares the day before: but
 that the Saddle at the first encounter scorned the
 weakenesse of his Strappes, and unworthily dis-
 burdened it selfe of so worthy a Master; who se-
 med somewhat perplexed to be so disappoynted,
 yet was pacified in the displeasure, when the rest
 receiued the same payment.

In this manner was Glory satisfied to see the
 Vertue of this new Knight accompanied with
 good successe, and so the Iudges with semblant
 suffrages, yeelded the honour of the triumph vn-
 „ to him: But hee vriterly disclaymed to assume it,
 „ considering the Duke had continued longest in
 the Field, and hee came like an Enemy in *ambusc-*
sado, espying the best aduantage for his sallying
 forth. To this *Rugio* opposed, as much pleased
 with his respect, as opinion of the rest: especially
 considering his hopes toward *Brizaca* were fru-
 strate, and therefore led him vp in great royalty to
 receiue the Prize: where the admirable Princessse,
 accompanied with many worthy Lapyes expec-
 ted, to whose portion Fortune would allot it: But
 when a full interuiew had taken away the vaile
 of doubtfulnesse, it was no kind entertainment,
 but

but a sence raniſhing ioy published him *Monta-*
nus, wherein shee might haue passed the limits of
 moderation, if *Trezoboro* had not sommoned her
 to put her other graces in practise. Now when
Montanus found him selfe the cause of this con-
 fused silence, and turmoyle, hee thought it high
 time to polliſh the rough way, and lead them to a
 plaine Field of his knowledge; whereupon hee
 vsed this preamble. Let not (great Princes) too
 suddaine a censure passe vpon my presumption
 or negligence; but rather be incensed against Ig-
 „ norance, and my owne Misfortunes, if respect haue
 „ not passed with her properties: But because you
 haue already participated with the discouery of
 this peerelesse Princessse, and yet still continue as a
 „ longing and louing Mother for the returne of an
 other Sonne, afford mee a little patience, and I
 „ will fill vp the measure of your hopes: Yet in re-
 „ gard the Iourney I vndertake is tedious, and this
 „ dayes trauell importuneth repose, I will dispen-
 ce awhile with the time, and procrastinate your de-
 sires till to morrowes conueniencie: But very
 quickly is the Sunne inſcoffed with the nights in-
 heritance, and *Trezoboro* in his sisters behalfe
 (stomaching the delay, hee thought *Montanus*
 made) challenged his honourable Promise, and
 accompanied him to King *Zalby*, the Duke, and
 rest of the Princes; who by this, furnished a roome
 of State, wherein the chiefest things worthy re-
 gard was strange expectation: So that after *Bri-*

Trebizond.

zaca with her princely assistants, had enriched the place, *Montanus* with a solemne Maiestie rose vp, and with the ceremony of a reuerent obeysance to them, a mannerly chearefulnesse to her, and sweet affabilitie to the rest, thus began.

*The History
of Artaba-
zes and Ol-
mus.*

WHOM so euer remembrance fauoreth with the occurences of an age forepast, must needs either read, or heare of the famous victories of *Armenus* surnamed the great, whose vallure subiected diuers resisting powers, and gaue name to the Country to his obedience reduced: In which hee had not long aduanced the Standard of imperiousnesse, but amongst others, erected two especiall Cittis *Sagarena*, and *Artaxata*: The first, corresponding to his Fathers: the second, to her Name; for whose sake the Country submitted to a Strangers wroth. In these hee constituted Lawes for the Common-wealth, and Orders for the Court; which although seemed repugnant to the peoples disposition, by reason they fauored of new inuention, and combined them to a strictnesse, rather wresting their obedience, then animating their loyalties: Yet the good vse by his overlooking, sealed their grudgings, and established him in a flourishing prosperitie; which though misfortune began to impugne by some slender reuolts, and the losse of the royall *Artaxata*; yet was fully re-integrated in a second Mariage with the magnanimous

Trebizond.

nimous *Talmiranda* Queene of *Assiria*; with whom hee spent the dayes of his yeares, and the yeares of his glory, glorying so much the more, because Nature imparted her Bountie in many particulars, and Time made the vphot with expectable issue: For his Sonnes, *Artabazes* and *Olmus* shewed in their bringing vp great hope, and in their Fathers life Honourable gouernment: But the aged *Armenus* must satisfie his debt to the whole worlds creditor, & leaue them in the world like Waxe wrought with a warme hand ready for any impressiō: At last, sorrow ouerpassed the time of her ceremonious sadnesse, and the noble *Artabazes* with due difficultie, or repining, inuessed himselfe with the royalties of both *Armenia*, *Assiria*, and many Prouinces annexed to his Empire; and for two especiall occasions lifted vp their heades to make them selues knowne to the King: The one, a Celebration of his Mariage with *Euphemia* heyre of *Arach* and the three *Arabs*: The other, a forme of Gouernment, as well to maintaine his Fathers good proceedings, as to auoyde the suspicion of his owne takenesse. In this, after extremitie compelled a strong Arme to ouerturne *Cleandres* House and confederates, every one applawded his method and manner, and the people were carried with admiration toward him, the rather because he assured, that the like iustice should be distributed as well to the poore as rich, & made his owne example a magnet to draw forth the

Trebizond.

steepest disposition: But when by many particulars tending to a perfect establishment, they found their peace and plentie to flourish, then were they violently carryed with zeale, duty, and reuerence: and truly (most mighty Princes) how euer some enuious hand did afterward cast poyson into his vertuous Spring, hee questionlesse layed a sure foundation, as your selues (if you will afford mee a little patience) may witness.

For the first thing he vndertooke, was the peopling a mighty Citie in the hart of his Realme, and erecting a sumptuous Pallace in the midst of the Towne; that a reseatle of all sorts, whom controuersies compelled to tryall of Lawes, this ordained to especiall persons, whom honour incited to follow the Court. The Buildings not yet so much beautified with externall curiousnesse, as firme stateknesse: and the Pallace an inuention of glory and eternitie: as hauing fore walles, well proportioned largnesse, stately lightes, easy Staires, great Entries, Princely Galleryes, conuenient Lodgings, wide and magnificent gates, aparted Offices, holtsome walkes, sweete Gardens, and delicate Nurseries: But what was this to the situation & politicke aduancement, the ground worke it selfe mounted two Furlonges higher then the other buildings, and the metation finished with the circuit of a Thousand yardes, all contained within the deepenesse of a double Moat to which industry of man had drawne vp the violence

Trebizond.

lence of many springes, and the circumference of a triple Wall: yet did a stealing hill in such soft vprising direct thee, that what with the brauery of the Marble paved streetes, and the comelinesse of the euen built houses waling foure great wayes of two hundred foot in breadth, eight hundred yardes in length from the Cittie gate to the first Pallace wall, thou wouldest haue been delighted in the iorney, and wondred with what pleasure thou hadst attained to such height: thus was it stronge to with stand insurrection, and in the midst for the better commaund of the Citie, and easer prouision of the Pallace: like the heart enuironed with the body, and the nourisher of life to all the members, they flourishing by the strength of it, and that prospering by the good order of them: Thus was it princely to resuscitate regarde, because the state of Maiestie may not be confounded with communitie, but retaine speciall reuerence. Thus was it named *Armaniranda* that the people in remembering their well affected Prince might conceiue he forgot not his much deseruing parentes.

The next matter of import was to vnaile the grossenesse of errors, and to reduce the gouernment to vniformitie, which consisting in the admittance of vertue and men louing vertue for vertues sake, selected such, whose integritie of life, and prudent directions warranted their worth for any purpose, as for follic either of her selfe loth-

some,

Trebizond.

Some, or bewitched with impietie abominable, she was altogether banished: the person whoeuer reiected for the imperfection, and the imperfection imputed rather to scorne of discipline, then naturall defect. This made the good goe forward in a well troden path, and the bad desist from accustomed ill life, to which they were as it were directed, by reason, so great a king made himselfe exemplary by his owne vprightnesse in iudgment, truth of word, reposednesse of speech, chearefulnesse of aspect, secrecie of businesse imparted, tolleration of inconueniences, resolution of enterprises, heroyicke proceedings in matters of Armes, constancie in affliction, and at all times reuerence toward the Gods.

The officers of his house were such, whose demeanour sollicitid Honour to remember their worth, or vertue beautified, that Honour before collated to them: yet was no man trusted to the libertie of his owne will, but receiued these instructions, to acknowledge the dignitie of a kinges person, to maintaine the secretes of state and Court, to perpetrate no fact incurring the crime of Maiesty, to detract no time nor occasion, which might set forth the honour of his kingdome, to admit no vnworthy person, as an officer in Court, to hinder no mans aduancement, that had merited his place, and to deprauce, nor depriue no complainant, till his cause were iudicially heard.

His

Trebizond.

His prouidence appoynted a Hundred Senators, as Presidents of Prouinces dispersed through the Empire; to whom he committed Causes of incombances, and Petitions of the people; not yet withdrawing him selfe from Controuersies of importance, nor forbidding to speake, whom Injuries enforced; so that the Proude and Mighty were depressed, the Vvake and Innocent comforted, and the Vvorthily regarded, confirmed.

The Priestes had charge to watch late, to rise early, to be spare of Diet, sober in speaking, patient in suffering, holy in conuersation, seruent in execution of Sacrifice, impartiall in reprehention, vntainted with priuate malice, no hoorders of Treasure, administers of wants, and keepers of their owne houses.

The Noble-men reziant in their Countries receiued these instructions, To haue their Houses stored with seruiceable Attendants, such as should neither be rash, quarrellers, lyers, blasphemers, gluttonous, gamesters, lecherous, or infamed: All which might be easily auoyded, or quickly prevented, if they them selues were milde, honest, sober, silent, patient, familiar, and deuoute: neither murmuring at the haunts of Brothers, Vncles, Coosins, and all other of their kin; nor denying to succour the necessities of poore Allies; or supplying the wantes of crauing Strangers, whose enforced aduersitie deserued compalsion.

The Iudges of the Kingdome, and Iustices of

Bb.

each

Trebizond.

each diuision were prescribed rules touching themselves, and had a commission concerning others: touching themselves in no sort to be irregular, nor lauish in tauntes, not arrogating vnproper titles; no vtterers of base reproches, no nourishers of impatience, no deriders of former instances, no despisers of ciuillitie, nor others ignorance, and about all no deniers of iustice, nor strangers to religion: concerning the people to make stronge weaknesse, to commend courage, to prouide before enforcement, to chastise dissolution, to succour in time, to appease sedition, to obserue conformitie, to cleare suspicion, to remedie heuinesse, and to temper the momentary ioyes of prosperity.

The Gent: whose youth added lustinesse to desire, and sufficiency to willingnesse, were aduised (with this caueat not to surpasse their degrees, or endanger their estates) to learne moralitie, as an ornament of the minde, and practise to be active for the enabling their bodies, either to Courtly pastimes, as the Prince delighted, or to Warres necessitie, as the Common wealth enforced, whereby was put in vse the running of rases, the swiftnesse of Footmanship, the wrastring by armes, the breaking of Horses, the sleight of the Launce, the casting of Dartes, the benefit of Slings, the stroke of the Sword, the wearing of Armour, and the aduantage of other weapons: besides the spare time of Countries repose was bestowed

Trebizond.

bestowed in taming of Beastes by pollicy, force, deuise of Toyles, deceite of pittes, coursing of Dogges, or cunning of Horsemanship: In catching Fowles by counterfeite of Voyce, limings of bush, placing of Ginnes, and exercise of hauking: In snaring of Fish, by skill of Hooke, groping by hand, casting the Net, opening the sluice, or poisoning the poole.

The Marchant was made acquainted to trauell abroad, to obserue his Martes, to learne nauigation, to abstaine from curiosity, to apply himselfe to the place of his Trade, to exchange his commodities, to be certaine of his admittance, and to make difference in the choise of his Marchandise, according to the variety of Countries, each affording natures beuntie, and the earthes plentie,

The Countri-man had these informations to till the ground, to Plough their seasons, to Sow their Corne, to reape the blessings, to howse their Stuffe, to order their Cattell, to Plant fruite, to sow Acorns, to set Wood, to quicken Ditches, to draine Marshes, to stocke Rootes, to cast Pondes, to sheare Sheepe, to trim Wooll, to weaue Cloth, to spinne Linnen, to dresse Hony, and to practise whatsoeuer labour might attaine to, or conceite imagine.

The Artificers were employed to build strongly, to Wall with stone, to strengthen with Iron, to make warme with Glasse, to heaw Timber, to burne Bricks, to graue in Metall, to cast Armour,

Trebizond.

To digge Mines, to search Welles, to deuise for Shipes, to Tann Leather, and to furnish townes: so that nothing was left vndone, which belonged to the vse of man, nor any thing done according not to reason and wisdom.

Thus (noble Princes) flourished the Commonwealth sine *Lustrums* together, vntill a wanton Securitie set on worke the worst part of mans malicioufnesse, and made euery paltry Controuerſie rather a wicked Cauell, then a necessary Complaint: For in short time, many Sycophants grew in the Common-wealth, (like some strange Disease on an infected body, which either carelesnesse or wilfulnesse neglected to cure, vntill it became vicerous and past redresse,) who neuer desisted from wrong information betwixt Neighbour and Neighbour; whereby they began in Displeasure, and ended in Despight. Many ambitious spirits not able to beare out them selues, suffred Enuie to intangle one another with infinite outrages; so that if one Cause were determined, ten Actions were commensed: and many diuclish Politicians prying vnder-hand into the demeanors of men, either brought them within apparant Default, or suborned Witnesse against them as, infringers of the Law; whereby euery man feared the conuersation hee kept, and repining Hurly-buries in a manner mutinied against the permitters: but especially when the King (growing mightie and rich, by reason diuers aduantages brought them

Trebizond.

them within penaltie of some Statute and Forfeitures,) became somewhat carelesse in such particulars, as before his Father and him selfe had overlooked: Then were vnder Officers left like vnskilfull Pilots in a dangerous Voyage; and there arose a very feare of confusion amongst the people, and lacked but a Head to draw them into action; which though it was not iustificable in the wrong course so to bee vndertaken, yet was to be pittied in the reasons, they inferred of redresse.

For speaking the truth, the men in authority (especially to whom the determining of controuerſies weare appoynted) not onely made benefit of the contentions of the people, but for the insatiablenesse of the benefit subuerted the first good intent of the lawes with quillites and detracting: besides, touching priuat humours, this ridiculous crossenesse chaunced, that where their owne originalis were for the most part base and obscure, they in the scorne and inueighing against others, laboured yet to ennoble themselves and their Children: Heere also was added the errors of higher officers euery one struing to aduance his friend and follower to such places, which other men expected for desert, or had wonne with time of seruice and attendancie; nor was this sufficient, but the Common wealth was burthened with strange impositiones, & diuers *Monopolies* brought only

Trebizond.

only benefite to some few persons to the generall
 repining and complaint of the kingdome: For
 the better sort stomached to see their honour
 checked and restrained: The men of Armes dis-
 dained to be vsed like flowers, which are worne
 " while they keepe their scent, but cast on the Dung-
 " hill neuer so little fading: The religious, like their
 " profession, were rather esteemed for a pollecie
 to keepe the people in awe, then in necessity to
 tremble at any iudgment to come: other Artists
 poore for lacke of practise, and therefore despised:
 the Countryman stouborne, malicious, and yet
 outwardly humble enough, vnderstanding but by
 others instructions, and a little soothed, brought
 into a Fooles Paradise: Only the Citisen made
 good shift, by reason nauigation was to be main-
 tained, and the entercourse of people bestowed
 their Mony amongst them: yet desisted they not
 from sinister meanes in gathering of wealth, and
 cruell extremitie in extorting aduantages, quickly
 suggested by base Brokers and petty Lawiers,
 who in the end made them resemble that enui-
 " ous man, who wished one of his eyes to be puld
 " out, so his companion might lose both, which
 " wrought so great feare (by reason Conscience ac-
 cused them of so many faultes,) that they quickly
 fined themselues, and when there was no such
 thing meant, consented to any imposition to main-
 taine their liberties,

Thus grew the name of Lawyer and Officer
 more

Trebizond.

more hatefull, then orderly execution: For their
 Pride and Wealth made them respect no body
 but themselues; nor any thing, but their owne
 profite: Now when Pride and Couetousnesse
 were yoked together, like vntamed Heifers vnder
 the hand of an vnskilfull workeman, the Plough
 went quickly aside with ill holding, and the Com-
 mon-wealth grew full of Wccdes for lacke of sea-
 sonable tillage; which was a long time marked,
 and as long concealed by the Kings brother *Olmus*,
 who quickly apprehended the mislike of the peo-
 ple, and as quickly entertained some steange
 hope in the apprehension; nor wanted their meanes
 and helpes to betray his conceite. For some indu-
 ced him to take the defence of the people into his
 hands; others dispersed Libels of defamation a-
 gainst the State: Some whispered against the King
 for not reforming these enormities; others dared
 to buzze in the peoples eares, that *Olmus* was of an
 other disposition; who in deed by this time, affect-
 ing a kind of popularitie, soothed each complaint
 with a pittifall behauiour toward many Suters,
 and sayre Promises to stand them in what stead
 he could: whereupon they flocked on heapes, and
 made intercession, hee would protect the Com-
 mon-wealth, offering their liues and goods in pro-
 fuse manner vnto him.

*Olmus the
 Kinges Bro-
 ther begin-
 neth an inno-
 nation.*

When

Trebizond.

*Artabazes,
stomaching
his Brothers
presumption
will not indu-
ce it, but Kills
him in the
Hurliburly.*

When *Artabazes* vnderstood the truth, and that *Euphania* pleaded the hazard of her selfe and Children, he durst not giue way vnto the mischiefe, for there was no sitting still in hearing of Innouation, but published an apparant mislike of these beginnings, and proclaimed against his Brother, for taking a wrong course and cause in hand: Nowe because the ielousie sprung from the hazard of his Crowne and dignity, it burst forth into flames of Despight; with which he ment to consume him, had not some speciall Coadiutors vnderpropped his ambition, wherby he was a while reserued, like a man tratorously asisted to the Top of an high tree, that his fall might be the greater, when they list to tumble him downe, for presently diuers ciuell Warres ensued, which the people with great feare and charges maintained, and *Olmus* with extremitie and policy continued, as fully resolved, that the fault now aggrauated would neuer admit reconciliation: sometime passed in this businesse, wherein all mediocrity ouerpassed (both Country and Citties suffering the wrecke of the mischiefe) wherupon a truce wastaken, and the king seemed contented to haue their grieuances heard, for which a sollemne meeting was appoynted at *Sagarena*: but *Artabazes* incensed to be thus Coorb'd, as he thought, would by no meanes admitte of other Course, then his owne pleasure, perswading his great

Trebizond.

great heart, or at least his great heart perswading him, that the authority of Kings consisted in commanding, and not in being ouerruled by audacious disobedience: with which quicke conceit he ouershot to dispute or Reason the matter, and so by forcible entrie broke into the consistory, with a strong hand dismissing the Counsell, amongst whom finding his vnhappy brother, he made the case more Lamentable, because he slew him himselfe, and that the company in a place priuiledged were vnable to reuenge it, who yet performed, what they durst, and durst doe no more, then exaltation on the action.

But the king carelesse of any mans repining, retyred his forces to the Principall fortresse, suspecting what a mutinous Multitude might vndoubtedly yeeld vnto, especially hauing already entertained mislike, and now confounded with new action of distrustes, which accordingly came to passe. For the Cittie dismayed with the report of *Olmus* death, and terrefied with the speeches of diuers, who gaue out that the King ment presently to sacke it, misdoubted their owne safety, and were vrged to Master their forces to saue their liues, which *Gestarius* incited them vnto (a Minion of the slaughtered Prince) and with a slender inuestiue quickly exasperated their displeasure. But heere Fortune laughed, first to see a man of iudgement deceiued in an idle choyce: and then the world bewitched to be caried out of

*Artabazes
Killeth his
brother Ol-
mus.*

*The story of
Gestarius.*

Trebizond.

the smooth path of Obedience by a blind guide into the stony and craggy freights of Innouation. For concerning the man, hee was in great credite about *Olmus*; yet neither birth allowing the fauour of a Court, nor education meriting any extraordinary liking; onely readinesse of Lip-labour adioyning some outward pleasantnesse to many abrupt speeches (of them-selues, neither in another gracious, nor from another allowable) made the ouercredulous Prince continue his loue; because hee had begun his liking, and admit the person for pleasing his fancie, loth to reiect so great hope, as his cunning perswaded; and vnwilling to bring his first Iudgement in question, which had so much ouerruled him. Touching his Action: as soone as silence was pittifully entreated, hee seemed to excruciate him selfe with sorrow, and began to vtter his minde, yet could not for deepe sighs, nor sigh long for many teares; which proceeding from affection, detained him awhile in some abruptnesse, till at last the strength of his desire to Reuenge, gaue libertie to the tongue thus to dispute.

“ O infortunate people (sayd hee) euen after so long goodnesse with the surfet of the same vnfortunate, now are you inuited to a sower Banquet; in which neither courtious entertainment alloweth a welcome, nor holosome Diet satisfaction; vnlesse odious Presumption, arrogant Contempt, wilfull Negligence, vnexpected Oppression, tyrannous

Trebizond.

nous Slaughters, and vnnaturall Murders, be the fare you attend, and the Delicates you hope after: For naught else affoordeth the Dishes of this course, or the courses of this Feast, considering your glory (O yee that were proude in the fruition of such glory) is quite extinguished; but in whom? in *Olmus*; o princely *Olmus* is slaine: But where? in the Pallace temple sacred to the people, and sanctified to the Gods: But how? by force of Armes, and furie of Tyrants: But by whom? by blood thirsty *Artabazes*, who with his owne hands chased vs from the place, and slew his Fathers Sonne in the Temple; which as I cannot declare without griefe, so I wish not let passe without redresse, considering you importune to haue the gouernment worthy your obedience; and not to remaine in a continuall feare of your ruine: For what shall wee expect, when the Common-wealth hath been made the Tennisball of Fortune, and tossed, as his violence inforced? When the Complaints of the people haue been derided, and irregular wilfulnesse set on foote manie diuelish stratagems; as for the Warres, which hath made vs all smart, they haue been but counted pastimes, and the meanes to disburthen him of ill willers: But concerning our selues, How shall we that be Strangers, liue without dismay, when hee which was his Mothers Sonne died without remorse? Let my very Enemies, whom yet I would not haue enemies to their Country, looke about

Trebizond.

with the eyes of zeale and discretion, and then tell
 mee, if the Kingdome thus distracted, stand not in
 need of better direction, when they see in all strong
 compacted Estates, either Wise men be advanced
 to authoritie, or men in authoritie ende uour to
 be Wise? Nor are we so flauishly bound to the
 succession of a Monarchy, not yet confirmed with
 eighty yeares memorie, to submit to priuat insati-
 ation, rather then provide for publicke good.
 What shall I say? I protest, neither old rooted Ma-
 lice, nor any priuate Displeasure of my owne, gi-
 ueth this euidence: Or as the ill willer may in-
 ferre, perpretrateth a crime; but the dangers you
 remaine in (most honourable *Armenianus*) to see
 your Priuiledges taken from you, your Goods dis-
 pearsed, your selues made slaues, your Wiues ra-
 uished, your Daughters deflowred, and your Cit-
 ties set on fire, (as if your names were to be for-
 gotten on earth) compelleth this aggrauation:
 For the Head corrupted, suffreth the Body to pe-
 rish, and the Minde to be contagious: a Spring
 poysoned, dissolueth the venom into the running
 Streame; and the Prince lifted vp like the head of
 a polliticall body, either of him selfe wicked, or
 of as wicked as him selfe mis-ledde, quickly rui-
 neth the flourishingst Kingdome. Then may
 the Subiects with amisse, because they hate, and
 hate in that they can receiue no good: which
 seeing wee haue such pregnant prooffe of, let vs in
 time, either alter this vntoward beginning, o
 depo

Trebizond.

depose our new beginning Tyrant: for in our
 case, wee sorry not that good men doe die; but
 tremble that the vicious doe liue.

No sooner had his rebellious eloquence soothed
 the conceits of the multitude, but with a muer-
 nous huriburly (not vnlike a raging Sea swelling
 ouer some small defence, which caryeth before it
 what so euer stoppeth his course; or a boysterous
 Winde, whose violence hurleth downe the great-
 est and highest Buildings) did they thronge on
 heapes against the place, whither safety had with-
 drawne *Artabazus*; and seeing the Ports guarded,
 were the more enraged, because resisted; yea al-
 togeather out of patience, as finding a likelihood
 of *Gestarius* inuincible, the most of them not kno-
 wing whither they went, nor aduised what to doe;
 yet because they would bee doing, did indeed
 what was not to be done: Some crying it surpas-
 seth Homicide, and no way to be excused; others
 wished their silence, and inferred there might be
 a causing circumstance: Some whispered the
 danger of delay, and that there was opportunitie
 to reuenge all their wronges; others gaue an as-
 fault, vainly presuming on the glory of the ex-
 ploye: Some thought it too much outrage, and
 therefore seemed halfe angry; others of a more dan-
 gerous courage, fearing a slacknesse in the deuision,
 were the angrier at their anger: Some gaue a caue-
 at to be aduised, least the King should preuaile;
 Cc 3 others

Trebizond.

others made vse of that doubt, that no Pardon would euer be graunted, and therefore as good purchase their Peace by force, or make it a generall trespasse.

Thus vnstayed hastinesse, the very principall part of trayterous insurrection, deuided their wits, and debarred all motions of allegiance, causing them, which intended to doe well, to practise what was amisse, and such as ment amisse to continue in ten times worse: so that *Artabazes* was amazed at the wretched vpror, and in a manner confounded to see such a concurrencie of mischiefs; but when he perceiued their outrage bent to entrap his life, and that they had begun a worke of great trouble, he summoned the best aduise he could of preuention, which concluded to winne time, the father of contraries, and by secret flight to preuent the present fury: reasoning thus, either their owne affayres would deuide them to their houses, or the charge in maintaining the Army would proue to combersome, or the Queene hauing strongly fortified her selfe in *Belcania*, would raise and encrease her power, or the neighbour amity of *Media* would sufficiently reynforce his Army: this his eldest sonne *Anzitemus* much vrged, because *Artabanus* the *Median* King was many wayes tyed in honour vnto him, and to this did they all condescend, making that night a sudden alarm and with a gallant sally quickly winning the Hauens with the Ships within the Riuer

Trebizond.

Riuer, wherein no man resisting (for the King *Artabazes* commanding, and was now able to be obeyed) leaueth *Armenia*. they as quickly embarked themselues.

But heere you might haue deciphered the operation of base cowardise, and gallant vallure; this of such vertue, that each daunger was as soone ouerpasse, as attempted: that of such changes, that the hurlyburly amongst themselues shue more with disorder, then the Enemy with aduantage: For as *Anzitemus* gaue the on set, and that the king followed to second him, whole Lanes were made through some few companies new risen, and the suddennesse suffered none to rise, who were otherwise ouertaken: besides, the night encreased the feare, the feare a confusion, & a confusion a most lamentable slaughter, which the King not regarded (as supposing Iustice had taken his cause in hand) but thanking Fortune for the opportunitie, left them amazed at the accident, and settled him selfe to the dispatch of his iourney.

By this time some better aduised, then the rest, gathered together the dispearsed Forces: but when the light of their Vnderstanding had vnited it selfe to the light of the Morning, and that they saw so pittious a spectacle, and knew the King was escaped, then followed another alteration: For the vnsettled multitude nere disputing on the first cause, condemned the present mischiefe, and began to enueigh against the inchantment of that exorcist *Gestarius*, which had so seduced them:

But

Trebizond.

but when they overlooked their damages, and conceived the matter, as Iustice had sent them to the house of Correction, then grew the terror amongst themselves more, then their courages against their enemies, none now being enemies, but such as enterprised the defence of *Gestarius*, who bafe in very basenesse it selfe allowed each reproch without Colour or excuse, and suffered the wrecke of his name with the losse of his owne life which done ~~was~~ a chiefe man amongst them aduised to submit to the Queene *Euphemia*, whom in all actions they had found a worthy patterne of Princelynesse and vertue, and would not now degenerate, considering *Gestarius* had already receiued the guerdon of a Traytor, and no man remained, but trembled to imagin, what the end would haue been, if the King had miscaried.

Gestarius
death.

This euery one applauded; and a present submission made intercession for a pardon, but by reason of her feare of *Artabazes*, it receiued not full life, yet shee accorded, what euer chanced, to make their peace, and they encouraged with her Princely promise disperced themselves, wherupon she sent forth a Pinace, as a messenger of these glad tidings to finde out *Artabazes*, which made such hast, that within three dayes it overtooke them ouertaken with such ill successe, as if mitchiefe and destruction indeed had called a dismall counsell to crosse a man,

For

Trebizond.

FOR (most Excellent Princes) euen when they *The story of* thought misfortune weary of her tyranny, they *Cleonidas &* descried a Fleet at Sea, the arch Pirat *Cleonidas* *Artabazes*. *das*, whom the Ministers of report had certified of *Artabazes* troubles, and mingling many lyes with some truth, perswaded, that most men desired his returne and aduancement, to which his former discontentments, and present meanes of Reuenge seemed to flater him, that if the worst fell out, he might ioyn with *Olmus*, and so make the same Water that draue the Mill, to drowne the Mill by his comming, causing the Brothers so to weaken on another, that at last he might be warranted to depresse the strongest party: This aduised him to furnish his Nauy, and hearing the voyce of the Windes sound comfort vnto him, made vse of the time, & set forward with speed, vntill he encountred *Artabazes* Sailing into *Media*, and thought Fortune very liberall in bestowing such a benefit vpon him: For now the choise of reconciliation or Reuenge was exposed, but Reuenge sounded like Musicke in his cruell cares, as maintained with the life of a more cruell heart, wherupon without parlee, or other amplifieing manner of defiance (more then that he exclaimed, how the fauour of the Gods had sent *Cleonidas* to cry quittance with the sonne of *Armenus*) he presently assaulted them.

But when the name of *Cleonidas*, wicked *Cle-*
D d. *onidas*.

Trebizond.

nidas, (yea in his wickednesse dishonorable *Cleonidas*) was vnderstood of *Artabazes*, neuer came vallue to be so miserably checked (as if the sound of *Cleonidas* had proceeded from the Trumpet of death) for a sudden sillnesse (far be it from any man to call it a feare) made such a *Metamorphosis*, that when there seemed greatest need of an emboldning courage, then began a misdoubt of death warranting sorrow, which departed not, till a strong party of sighes and teares disproportioned his magnanimitie: at last he remembered himselfe, and seeing his sonne *Anzitemus*, as it were overlooking him, caught hold of his Arme, and thus spake:
 „ O the strength of my life? O my *Anzitemus*?
 „ Be not dismayde at this extasie, nor impute the
 „ titell of Cowardise to the father of such a sonne,
 „ but the only opinion, & the now examination of the
 „ same, which I conceiued of the wise *Dermaistro*,
 „ who long since in a greefe-working sadnesse assured,
 „ that *Cleonidas* would be ominous vnto me
 „ hath ouerswaied that allacrytic, which I once supposed
 „ no mischance should distemper: yet I protest, this is not
 „ troublesome in regard of my selfe,
 „ but for thee, whom I haue double and irreuerably betrayed
 „ and abused: But necessitie made a breach of his speeches:
 „ For *Anzitemus* (answering no otherwise, then liue
 „ *Artabazes* in despite of *Cleonidas*?) was enforced to the fight,
 „ and so disposed his Ships, that *Cleonidas* determining
 „ to Grapple, thought to discouer some aduan-

Trebizond.

aduantage by Wheeling about, and turning his Sailes. And as when two mightie Rammes enraged with the smart of well inforced stroakes, quickly part themselues, and to the vnexperienced make a Cowardly retreat, but indeed to meete againe with sorer fury: so acted *Cleonidas* his part, for what with animating of some, terrifying of others, and his owne example he set forward againe, and becirkled the ship, wherein *Artabazes* was with foure greater: Now who had seene the peerelesse King for his worthynesse could not, but haue thought valure rightly bestowed, such was the slaughter he made, such was the confusion, which followed: The shipe full of dead Carcasses, full of dying men, full of wounded fighters, himselfe bestowing no blow, but like a Messenger of Reuenge and ouerpressed with number like a Minister of rage, as for the rest, the valiant in their deaths outfaced death, the coward saw his shame rewarded either with miserable slaughter, or slauish Captiuitie: the Ships were suncke and dismembred, and *Anzitemus* began to be ouermastred fighting with *Cleonidas*, which when *Artabazes* perceiued, his impatience was so great, that Terror it selfe might haue beene dismayed at the distemperature: For a strange fury began a strange action overthrowing all resisters, making some Armelesse, some Headlesse, some Liuelesse & desisted not, till he approached the place where his sonne fought, and displacing him began

Trebizond.

gan the Combate himselfe, which continued in such a fashion, that *Anzitemus* was deuicided from them, though his handyworke had wrought the Miracles amongst the company: at last *Artabazes* (as angry, that it stood him in no more stead) threw away his sword, and closing with *Cleonidas* supposed with maine strength to throw him ouer-board.

Heere began a new contention, as if destruction ment to shew the beholders variety, but after many windinges, shouings, and turnings both strong, both cunning, the Pirat was ouerthrowne, but not with that quicknesse, but *Artabazes* fell two, compelled by the fast holding on another: thus lay, they both breathing, both fainting, till *Cleonidas* awaking the very secrets of mischief, and perceiving the neerenesse of his owne Ship gaue directions to tumble them together therin, which whether they neglected thinke (Noble Princes) when it was as quickly done as spoken, and the Enemy to manhood- commaunded to vngapple, and so to depart with their gotten Price, which though *Anzitemus* strived to intercept, yet Fortune vnwilling to his destruction infringed his desires, and left him dying in seeing his father so captiued: and Ten times dying in the succorlesse helpe remaining: nothing with holding his owne entrance into the house of death, but hope of *Cleonidas* death, which very shortly he had time enough to meditate on, though slender meanes

Cleonidas
carieth Ar-
tabazes
away priso-
ner.

to

Trebizond.

to execute: For when his eyes returned from their dastardly flight, as they termed it (because they might as well haue Triumphed ouer him) to regarde his present estate, and that he found of sixteene Saile & two Thousand men but two barckes, and fiftie eight in fastie, suppose he remained rather not knowing how to dye, then wishing to liue: at last the life breathing Counsell of *Aradmio*, saythfull *Aradmio* recalled his spirits, and thus dispelled the combersome enemies of courage: Honorable *Anzitemus* leauing further ampliation of Titles, let deuine resolutions be rather reuerenced, then disputed on; let huaine actions be rather accounted the subiects of change, then Anchor hold of perpetuities: let vertue be still it selfe rather to redresse mischief, then maintaine prosperity? Let time haue her allowance, and what we suppose vnlikly, that will dispose vnlookt for: This I am bolder to inferre, because without doubt a secret influence doth none ouerrule, and might in some persones effect demissnesse, but in you, where the better part remaineth vnassaulted, which is magnanimity, let that apply and imploy it selfe to redresse, wherein no doubt as your constancie shall appeare, your succour shall approach: proceed therefore in your iorney to *Artabanus*? Whose ayde may ser you forward into *Persia*, or wherfocuer *Cleonidas* is supported: or if you please you may returne into *Armenia*, where I am sure, if you will take the protection of the Kingdome into your hands, you shall

D d3.

bc

Trebizond.

be able with loue and leasure to raise sufficient power to plucke *Artabazes* out of the lawes of destruction.

But *Anzitemus* vitterly neglected, yea in a manner despised the motion of returning, protesting neuer to returne, vnlesse *Artabazes* did returne; or both ouerturne their liues right to her contraries vsurpation, and therefore tooke the other course of going to *Artabanus*; where he was without scruple or diffidence entertained. But (most royall Princes) Misfortune followed like a shadow; for wee found the Noble king in such distresse as there seemed no hope of our recouery:

Montanus
discouereth
himselfe to be
the Sonne of
Artabazes.

Then belike (quoth the Duke) you were a party in this businesse? Great Duke, I was; and to bee plaine, am that vnfortunate *Anzitemus* the first borne of *Artabazes*, vnfortunate in being that I am; but ten times vnfortunate in not being at all.

Montanus
having disco-
uered him-
selfe to be
King *Artabazes*
Sonne
by the name
of *Anzite-
mus* marryeth
Brizaca.

O Thou life of the World! thou glorious Sunne, (quoth *Ligornio* Prince of *Bactriana*) Who hath not heard of *Artabazes* misfortune? Who hath not heard of *Artabanus* successe? Who hath not heard of *Persias* troubles? Who hath not heard of *Anzitemus* victories? With that, hee arose to imbrace him: Nor were the rest of the Princes so vsatisfied in opining his Discourse, as once to suppose there were errours in the same; but likewise arose, as if indeed the same of his actions, and greatnesse of his birth, had

Trebizond.

had read them a lesson of respect and reuerence: Whereupon *Ligornio* tooke the King *Zulby* and the Duke aside, and gaue them notice, whom Fortune as malignant had thus turmoyled, whom Vertue as predominant had thus conserued, whom Fame as triumphant had thus eternised; which *Rugio* (hauing long since receiued the deuision of report) willingly acknowledged and therefore with true Honour welcommed him by the name of venuous and victorious *Anzitemus*: then followed the King, then the rest: last of all, as the Iudges before led him to receiue the Prize from *Brizaca*, they now conducted him to be receiued Princesse of *Brizaca*, alleaging that neuer deuine fauour could open the Treasure house of bountie vnto them, as now to behold the Pallace of *Fortuna* the place for truth and strangenesse to display the ensigne of admiration, for loue and beautie to March vnder the standard of vertue, for vallure and magnificence to flourish with the Coulours of Maiesty, for Riches and contentment to conduct the Vantgard of delight, and heere to appoynt the *Rendezvous*, as if they had concluded a Triumph of happinesse; The Gods therefore forbid (quoth *Rugio*) that any default of mine should intercept your desires: loue him then *Brizaca*? Loue her then *Anzitemus*? and long may you liue to loue, and not liue, except you loue one another.

Great was the grace afforded *Rugio* for this:
great

Trebizond.

great was the ioy the Kings and Princes made for this, great was the amaze the Court shewed for this, great was the applause the people yeelded for this: but when the royall *Brizaca* sealed once againe on her comfort, and that her happinesse extended in the highest degree of equality, shee thought it inequality in the highest degree not to glory in his loue, so firmly before incorporated, & so fortunately now confirmed; therefore she wil-
Anzitemus
and Brizaca
married.
 led a publicke solemnisation of a new contract: nor seemed the euer-willing *Trezoboro* to repine at his Sisters choyce, but made vp the defects of the consort with his plawditie. By this time, the household Officers couered for the Feast, and the Trumpets sound gaue warning of a new worke to the obseruations of good Customes adioined further conference, and with severall delights posted the seuerall howers of that day; *Rugio* striving to set forth his owne greatnesse, and the Princes much pleased to receiue so full contentment: Yet the youthfull *Trezoboro* and diuers others, to whom the report of strange aduentures seemed instigations to as strange performances in themselves, were vnsatisfied in the broken off Discourse of *Anzitemus* proceedings, vntill *Ligornio* to doe them a pleasure; and least *Anzitemus* should be too sparing, speaking of him selfe, (but especially to allow him opportunitie with the much desired *Brizaca*, to whom he might at leasure, yeeld account of his heretofore well employed time) con-

discended

Trebizond.

discended the next day to finish his Story: which *Anzitemus* gratified as a kindnesse, and so left the Prince to pensell on the Table of his renowne.

AFTER the ciuill Warres of *Persia* (quoth the Prince) had made the Seruants of *Bellona* wearie in executing her bloody Commandements, a pacification was effected in the election of a man fitt for the gouernment (which at last, though *Artabanus* King of *Media*, a Prince of sufficient power, and more sufficient direction, was nominated) yet fell to the share of *Astages*, by reason of his blood, education, and commorance amongst them. This *Artabanus* took in ill part, and was amongst the *Medians* a reputed contempt; nor wanted there such, which inferred, that the scorne was greater in the refusal after they had by their Embassadors vrged it, then if the matter had neuer been proposed: Of this sort, the especiallest man was *Medormus*, who well hoped for the Crowne of *Media*, if *Artabanus* obtayned the other: whereupon an ambitious Counsell of Warre concluded reuenge, and confirmed the manner by inuasion, the rather because *Adelphus* Duke of *Alstratia* offered the disbursing of great summes of his owne, and tooke vpon him the conduct of the Army, which consisting of foure score thousand foote, ten thousand Horse, and foure thousand

Ligornio proceeded in the History of *Artabazes*, & beginneth with the story of *Artabanus* and *Astages*.

Trebizond.

thousand Camels for burden, made him presume, that *Astages* in the inchoation of his Peace, was not able to raise sufficient forces to withstand him, considering his Souldiers hauing the prey and spoyle of a Country (worthy any title) exposed vnto them, seemed impatient at restraint; and indeed performed their duties in the best manner; as when you see a costly Prize erected at the end of a Goale, and the runners striving to make it the Trophe of their victorie: For at their first entrance they began with subuerting of Houses, felling of Wood, ftering and cutting of Corne, drying of Cattle, enconcing of Wayes, and making of Forts: But *Astages* vnwilling that the Earth should bee vnfurnisht of her golden Apparell, which already the vngentile multitude had presumed to disrobe; and forecasting, least the best part of his Country should be the Seate of the Warre, came forward in person, with a full and well furnisht Armie, compounded of all those Souldiers, which in the ciuill Warres were vnaturally caried against one another; but now finding the sweetnesse of a little Peace, determined absolutely for the honour of *Persia*, and within seuen dayes made the tryall of Sworres warrant their affection to their King and Country.

Thus both the Armies are drisen to a mighty encounter, not vnlke to a dusty Path dauncing to and fro as obedient to the Winde, till an extraordinary violence wherewith the vppermost moued

Trebizond.

that a man would wonder, how one blast should so soone deuide so great an Heape; by which vnfriendly greeting, the one party hath great cause to lament; the other small reason to triumph: The Earth bled for woe, considering the effusion which was made, made her change colour, and receiue vnnaturall moysture: The Beastes whose seruice consisted in the skilfull managing of the Rider, lay dismembred, the men whose cunning was countermaunded by vnfortunate aduantage fell dismounted: The Captiue supposing the law of Armes would haue serued his turne, is suddainely stab'd, the Triumpher is ouertaken with an others weapon in his owne bowels, ere the Blade is out of the others body: One-while the *Persians* troope with applause of preuayling, anone the *Medians* shout with ioy of victorie, as when you see a mightie presse of people, sometime shoouing forward with a murmuring noyse into that corner; sometime backward into this place, and many times confused with the cry of the company: To conclude, what Stratagem disorder of courage euer performed was now for the manner dangerous, and the number lamentable: For had not the night hastened to decide the quarrell, some other Company must haue ended it, considering it would soone haue ended them. Thus are the *Persians* retyred with great damage, and the *Medians* entrenched with small gaines; who slenderly moued with this defeature, are not at all re-

Trebizond.

mooued from their first wilfulnes, but determine,
that new supplies shall make another tryall to pay
their double losses: So haue I seene an vnskilfull
Archer loosing one Arrow, to shoote another af-
ter to find it, till taking great paines in the search,
he like a foole returneth with the losse of both:
Whereupon *Adelphus* sent *Poligambus* into *Me-*
dia, who certified *Artabanus* of the vnfortunate
disaster, extolling indeed aboue truth, the force of
the Enemy, to deminish their owne shame in their
ouerthrow; but this newes was not so ill of it selfe,
as in the effect it procured. For *Medormus* taking
aduantage of these particulars, that the losse in *Persia*
would busie them heere with forren occasions:
that the supplying them would much troubled the
kingdome: that the absence of the kings best friends
gaue him oportunitie to strike the Iron, while it
was hott; and that his owne abillitie seemed euery
way strong enough for the attempt, made a strange,
cruell, and Trayterous reuolt; wherein without
doubt a prosperous beginning had been sustained
with vnproper successe, if by the ariual of *An-*
zitemus the make of despaire had not been taken
off, and a new Countenance of hope smiled on the
discomforted King, discomforted not so much in
displeasure of his owne affaires, as in the despight
of *Medormus* vnkindnesse, who had so kindly been
beholding vnto him, as your selues may thus
witness.

Artab.

Trebizond.

Artabanus now raigning, was sonne of *Ar-*
tabanus Otanes, who had the title of a father
doubled in enioying also a Daughter called *Gliranda*, & his ioy redoubled in those giftes
of nature, beaurie, and Maieftie, which excelled
in her, and the rather excelled, as yeelding to the
gouernment of vertue and obedience: vntill some
violent humour willingly lifting ope the Gate of
ambytion made a strange loue, the vnnaturall cause
of a strange hate. For somewhat pleased in the gal-
lant youthfulnessse, and well deseruing towardly-
nesse of this *Medormus*, sonne of *Cestus* brother
to *Artabanus* the father, after many circumstan-
ces and endeours to purchase her liking, she ad-
mitted rather with a generall curtesie, then any
particuler affection, his discourses and desires:
but when his loue was pleaded with resolution,
that neither father nor brother should be any ob-
stacle for her head to be impaled with the Crowne
of *Media*, vrging his right indeed by being the el-
der brothers sonne, a matter long since (as shee
partly heard in question, and determined other-
wise) neuer was vertue so out of countenance:
For admitting his reasons and inducements, she
rann Arme in Arme with him in the race of a vio-
lent Treason: yea such an impression had the ex-
pectation of her glory made, that in the infant time
of her abortiue proceedings she stomached lesse
reuerence, then what is accoustomed to Quenes,
and

E c 3.

Trebizond.

and was not ashamed to proclaime her now title, and defiance against her Father : nay more, after the discouery, and that they were preuented, she dared to exasperate the kings displeasure with a kinde of impudencie, who enraging to see such offenders past shame, commaunded the prerogative of Maiestie to proceed against them, wherby without question they had both lost their liues, as before they had done their loyalties, if her brother *Artabanus* now raigning had not importuned a hard returning mercy : yet could not the father so passe over the vnkindnesse: For he presently entertained all the Ministers of rage and discontentment, by whom he was quickly miscarried to the house of sicknesse, wherein only able to assure his sonne, that Kings permitte neither concurrent nor Competitor, with a life fainting farewell, he bad him remember his father, and looke to himselfe.

Now encreased new troubles, because *Medormus* and *Gliranda* set on worke new Treasons, as perceiuing one only obstacle to debate their progresse to the dignitie, which made them contriue to remoue it, wherein they went somewhat cunningly to worke, causing a good mother to bring forth a bad Childe, and vnder CouLOUR of an Honorable exployte to incite *Artabanus* to the inuading of *Persia*, not doubting but he might miscary in the danger, or they by his absence haue conueniency to reuolt: but when the kings
sending

Trebizond.

sending *Adelphus* had thus disappointed them, the very despight discouered, that there is no confidence to be attributed to a reconciled enemy, who like the Serpent of *Nilus* came fawning, creeping, yea and shed teares, till he was able to reach his prey, and then Muredred him without remorse, & so wrought with them from acknowledging a life sauing benefit, that they once againe attempted a death working Catastrophe: a Catastrophe I may well terme it; as hauing a double reference both to the king, and themselves: For soothed, or rather betrayed to this opportunitie of *Artabanus* forces overthrowne in *Persia*, they began an intestine broyle and innouation in *Media*, which shewed the countenance of such miserable towardlynesse, that the king was enforced to fortifie himselfe in the Citie of *Abadod*, where commonly his Court was kept, and the people were euer carryed with a Zeale toward him: neither did *Medormus* prosecute him, and within seauen dayes after *Anzitemus* arriuall (to whom for the strangenesse and crosse variety the King imparted both the one and the other Warr) miserably beseiged him.

When *Anzitemus* perceiued to what tryall his patience was enforced, he repined at the troubles, rather then was troubled with any repining, because his owne determination for *Artabazes* deliuey was procrastinated, and he himselfe must needs be engaged for *Artabanus* releife: yet
making

Trebizond.

making vertue of necessitie; and willing to affright
 Conceit with some imployment, hee offered the
 king two especiall iewels of his treasure, Direction,
 and Encouragement; that in regard of his louing
 Cittizens, whom hee meant to protect: this in re-
 spect of his disloyall Subiectes, against whom hee
 determined to proceed; wherenpon a summons
 brought them to hearken after a Parlee, and *Arta-
 banns* out of the Window of a Port, thus deliuered
 his minde.

I am gladd louing, and yet disordred louing
 Friends, that I speake to such, who by their quiet at-
 tention make shew at the first, of wisdom & obe-
 dience; I will therefore without euasion, or chal-
 lenging this vnkinde and vnnaturall bearing of
 Armes against your King, come to the purpose in
 deed: If then my defects and extremities haue
 been so narrowly searcht into, that I seeme vnwor-
 thy to enioy my Inheritance, I was neuer so vn-
 tractable to reiect good counsaile and aduise: or if
 they haue been so vnaturally vrged against mee,
 that you cannot beare the burden without a re-
 uolt; yet you might orderly haue discovered your
 griefes, and desired reformation: for I protest be-
 fore the Reuenger of all Treasons, that I ioyne
 with you in well wishing to haue Goodnesse flou-
 rish, Prudence direct, Fortitude protect, Iustice
 controule, and Temperance moderate: Or if any
 better course might like a quiet working Potion,
 be administered for the health of this Politicall
 body;

Trebizond.

body, the patient is not so discompted to cast
 away himselfe: But if priuate grudges haue led
 you out of the smooth paths of reason to the rag-
 ged and stony streights of passion, returne for
 shame, least your foolish choise scandalise you to
 the world, or for feare, least you be driuen to an
 vnpreuentable destruction: But if the ambition of
 others hath detained you in the bondage of impos-
 sible hopes and flatteries, shake off the deceite, and
 with the eyes of discretion behold your owne
 weaknesse, considering Iustice correcteth the of-
 fender, as well as rewardeth the well deseruer:
 But if *Medormus* Treasons (hatefull to God and
 man, esppecially to me, that am his kinsman, life
 giuer, and soueraigne,) haue bewitched your sim-
 plicities, that you can be content to despise your
 king, disturbe the commonwealth, slaughter your
 friendes, Butcher vp your kindred, ruine this
 established Citty, and make a confusion of all:
 Whether may I iustly exclaime on your vnre-
 uerent partiallity, or the world condemne you for
 witlesse & outraged? but me thinks, I heare some
 good Angell whisper amongst you, it is reason and
 truth I haue discovered, and therefore there must
 be error, nay monstrous rebellion in these pro-
 ceedings; deferre therefore your threatnings and
 keepe your vallures in store against your enemies;
 for heere are none but allies, Countrymen, friends,
 and kindred, vnlesse like Parricides you are deter-
 mined to vnrippe the Bowels of so carefull a Mo-
 ther, I meane your Countrie, for whose Honour,

Trebizond.

„ if not for my sake; Be not stained with the loth-
 „ some spotted of infamy; And behold mercy, peace,
 „ and life offer themselves to your free election,
 „ take; and choose? the King speaks, the king pro-
 „ miseth, the King will performe; if not; let these
 „ be the times of terror, and the day of my aduance-
 „ ment neuer reckned in the yeere for this your stif-
 „ neckednesse; This was vttered so passionately,
 „ that the extremity burst forth into teares breeding
 „ remorse, yea the manner of his demeanor was such,
 „ that the impression had wrought their defiance a-
 „ gainst disobedience, had not *Medormus*, stubborne
 „ *Medormus* counterpleaded: they were entrapped
 „ with subtilty; and ensnared with a cunning baite,
 „ tush (sayth he) though *Artabanus* may make you
 „ belecue, he will forgiue, yet can he neuer for-
 „ get this fault, and in the greatest plentie of your
 „ dayes will once for all make a seisure of your
 „ selues and inheritances; besides? your names and
 „ families shall be odious vnto him, alwayes sub-
 „ iect to ielousies, and neuer put in trust with mat-
 „ ters of import, as for aduancements they? shall be
 „ so farre from being conferred vpon you, that
 „ like strangers you shall stand for euer remote;
 „ But why bread I this scruple amongst you? You
 „ haue Iustice on your side, and conscience bids
 „ you assist me, that am wronged, as for *Artabanus*,
 „ he vsurpeth my right, and as the best of you can
 „ tell, so did his father deale with vnfortunate *Cestus*
 „ his elder brother; goe on therefore; goe on; I
 say

Trebizond.

say againe goe on, deuide the Kingdome at plea-
 sure, and make your owne peace and prosperitie
 to flourish. But for all this golden field of Pro-
 mises, the third part of his Armie the next night
 shrunke from him; and were doubly welcome to
Artabanus, both in the succour by the vnitng his
 owne Forces, and the benefite in making knowne
Medormus secrets: whereupon *Anzitemus* perswa-
 ded to sally, reasoning on the dishonour? for a Sub-
 iect to engage so great a King in one silly Towne.

This was so forcible with *Artabanus* (who loo-
 king on *Anzitemus* with the eyes of Iudgement,
 wondred with what settled grauitie his Counsailes
 were deliuered, as if maturenesse had brought him
 from the wanton aboard of Youth to the house of
 Wisedome,) that the men of Armes were that
 night deuided into two parts: the one left with
 the King, as a sufficient guard for the Citie: the
 other committed to *Anzitemus*, as an able Armie
 for the Field; with which by breake of day, hee sal-
 lyed forth, and resembled a beautifull Plant newly
 come to some stee in a Garden, which euery look-
 er on praised, as an Ornament to the place, and fea-
 red, least some misfortune might ruine before his
 time: But *Medormus* made vse of his Souldiers re-
 uolting, fortifying himselfe the stronger; doubling
 his Watches, and in person ouer-looking his
 Campe and Trenches, whereby hee was prepared
 at all times; and so when the Alarm was giuen,
 quickly made it an equal tryall: and although the

Trebizond.

valiant *Anzitemus* whirled in the thickest presse,
 weakning the troopes, abating the strength of the
 Enemy, reuerſing the diſpaire of the fainthearted,
 and proſecuting actions beyonde expectation,
 whereby his glory was both publiſhed, and ſto-
 maked; his friends amaſed to behold magnanimi-
 ty ſo well beſtowed, and his enemies confounded
 to finde the vallure of one man ſo ſufficient: yet
 were the *Medormians* ſo reſolute, and encoura-
 ged, that *Anzitemus* would not be further en-
 gaged, then his owne forces might purchaſe a
 freedome, & therefore made an honorable retreat,
 as when you ſee the afterdrops of a ſtorme conti-
 nue in the greateſt force at the parting: This he
 accouſtomed many times beſides, as if deſtruction
 ment to play the wanton with the company, ra-
 ther leſſning their number, then their hate; which
 ſo diſcouraged *Artabanus*, perceiuing no other
 hope then the calamity of his Realme, and confu-
 ſion of the people, that he determined by ſingle
 combat to preuent theſe reuenge-crying maſſa-
 cres, reſembling the Pellican, who by haſſard of
 her owne life, feedeth and preſerueth her young
 ones.

NOW when *Anzitemus* perceived ſo gallant
 reſolution, hee could not miſlike the ſame;
 yet checked his owne ſlackneſſe for not
 being author of the matter; and therefore
 to make as it were ſatisfaction to his opinion, hee
 vrged

Trebizond.

vrged *Artabanus* to elect him Champion of his
 cauſe, not ſo much in deed to confirme the King
 toward him, as to try *Medormus*; ouer whom hee
 was in a manner emulous: Againe, ſuppoſing in
 the preuayling an euerlaſting league would be
 combined, or in the default, his troubles ſhould
 end with his owne end: Heere grew a vertuous
 Contention betwene *Artabanus* and *Anzitemus*,
 the one inferring the vnreaſonableneſſe of the
 cauſe to bring a man of his deſeruing into ſo great
 danger for an others buſineſſe: the other, inſiſting
 on his deſire to match the Aduerſary vpon equall
 termes: at laſt, *Anzitemus* preuayled, and a Hear-
 rold for the King proclaymed the Deſiaunce;
 which *Medormus* durſt not but accept, becauſe
 the Company ouerboldly vrged him, that a Prince
 in poſſeſſion was willing to aduenture both life
 and dignitie; and they them ſelues were almoſt
 tyred with butchering one another. But when
Gliranda euer doting on his ſtrength, and cunning
 in matters of Armes, allcadged the likelihood of
 ſucceſſe, hee neuer diſputed, but appoynted time,
 place, and manner; which was by prime of day at
 a fournight's end, a full mile from the Cittie, and
 like a Knight on Horſe-backe with Launce,
 Sword, and Shield: And although in the meane
 ſpace, ſome quiet ſpirits laboured betwene the
 parties, wiſhing *Artabanus* pacified toward his
 Siſter and *Medormus*; and vrged *Medormus* to
 ſubmit to the King, whom Vertue would queſti-
 onleſſe

Artabanus
 offereth pri-
 uat Combate
 to *Medor-*
mus which
Anzitemus
 performeth
 for the king.

Trebizond.

onlesse bring to the house of Pardon; yet hee misconstruing the Moderation of Peace-makers, was wilfully bent to put all to this tryall.

Thus is the day come, and the dignity of the King compelled some magnificent Shew for the furnishing of *Anzitemus*. First, diuers Pursuants at Armes gaue notice of *Artabannus* approach, and a L. Marshall with a hundred Seruants all well appoynted, so deuided the disordered multitude, that the way seemed a liuing Wall, as if the men had admitted direction by line and leuell: then followed two hundred Courtiers on horse-backe richly apparelled for their owne credits, and the Kings Honour: Next marched owne hundred Gent. on foote all in a Linerie futable, which was a Roabe; *Morisca* fashion almost to the small of the Legge of flame color Vener, yet so darkened with black-silke and gold-lace, that you might easily imagine, there was sorrow mingled with his glory, they had Sea caps embroded sorting to his *impresa*, semiters according, and halfe buskins of white Spanish Leather enclosed on the outside with flame color Ribbin: Then followed twenty spare Horse, on whom rode so many Pages bearing seuerall shields with his deuice, which was a ship in full Saile betwixt *Scythia* and *Carthage*, the Mour, *As ill is to come*, giuing notice his troubles were not ended, though he should atcheine this aduventure: after them rode fure Knights with his caske, Lance, Sword, Shield and Horse, which

611110

was

Trebizond.

was trapped in a sumptuous and curious caparison of Cloth of gold, wrought like flames of fier couered ouer with rowles made like waues of Sea water Greene Cipers, in such an artificiall loosnesse mingled with the stuffe, that you would haue supposed the water to haue quenched the fier, and the fier to haue burned the water, besides they were hooked together with great Claspes of Goldsmiths worke richly Enameled, but more richly beautified with Diamonds and Rubies. Presently followed a new fashion Chariot made like a Rocke irremoueuably standing for all the waues seemed impetuous against it, which by reason of the motion of the Wheeles tossing water against it indeed, like the violence of a Mill, resembled a tempestuous Sea: Vnder it, or rather within it satte *Anzitemus* and *Artabannus*, who in a pleased grauitie and yet displeased Countenance gaue the people to vnderstand, his care was not so much for his owne glory, as their safety: The Rocke was tyed to certaine Cables made of blacke Silke and Gold, which had their seuerall fastning to fixe Pinnacles, so well deuised, that the Horses enclosed within them gaue action full libertie, and they Sailed with the Rocke away, as if they determined to drawe it out of the Sea: but the faster they went, the forer did the Billowes threaten by beating on the sides, yet stood the Rocke strongly founded, assuering that vertue and magnanimitie remaineth integrate, what aduerce crosses so

cuor

Trebizond.

euier chaunce: Round about went fiftie Gent. on foote, the younger sonnes of Noble men with Pollaxes in their hands, whose neerenesse to the king gaue notice of their Honorable place, and credite. After followed the Officers of his Court, Guard, & Attendance; and last of all, fise thousand armed Souldiers brought vp the Reare, who well marshalled with their Commaunders and Officers, was not the least grace to the Triumph.

Thus *Artabanus* came with *Anzitemus*, and *Anzitemus* with *Artabanus* into the Lifes, mouing his very Enemies with the manner of his cariage, and the state of his spectacle: and although his behaiour neither enclined to exceeding chearefulness: nor disconsolate sadness, whereby they might haue vsed correspondence in theirs; yet began they to wonder with a kind of repentance, how they had been all this while subiect to such preuarication: but the approach of *Medormus* extinguished these meditations, who certified by the Earle *Marshall*, that *Anzitemus* was already in the Feeld, thus issued out of a Crimson Veluett, all imbrodred with Crossebowes of Gold with this Mott: *Viribus plusquam ingenio*:

First a fame on Horsebacke diuulging her hate to secrecy founded a very Warlike diuision: next followed diuers gallantly mounted with the seuerall *Penons* of all his Troops: then came fiftie Gent. on foote all apparrelled a like in an vpper Roabe of *Arabia*; the stuffe Crimson Veluett, the fashion open

Trebizond.

open before, cutt vp behind, and of each side: all places yet enclosed by reason great Gold-lace Buttons made of intricate knottes, were folded within the circuit of the like Loopes: On their head the attyre now vsed in *Turkestan*, but long since in *Siria*, made of Crimson & yellow Cipers rowled compony together, and thicke beset with Spangles: behinde almost to the Calfe of the legg hung a Scarfe fastned to the towles of Crimson-Tatara, all ouer embrodred with Crownes: By their right side a short Sword, guilt in the like coulored Sheth, as if they had been all left-handed, and signified, that what enheritance could nor challenge, by one meanes or other he would obtaine: their Stockinges were of Yellow samitt, and Shooes of red Leather, as if they purposed for their Maisters sake to tread in Bloud: Then rode fortie Knights his Allies and confederates, Armed in guilt Armour pounced with a Garden of Marigoldes, and a heauen ouerspredding with a glorious Sunne in it, as if he were the Sunne of their glory, whom like the Marygold they would obserue, for he had giuen them already Guilt maces in their hands, resembling Scepters with intent to inuest them kings: After followed ten Pages on so many spare Horses richly caparisoned with seuerall deuises, but their sheeldes had one *Imprese*, which was an Arrow flying out of a Bow to the Element: The Mott higher then another: next attended three Knights with his Helmet, G g. Sheild,

Trebizond.

Shield, & Launce: Then came he himselfe proudly mounted, his Armour sumptuously enameled with certaine Crosse-bowes, which were no way to be bent but by force, but to see them of Goldsmiths worke richly embelished with Rubies and Opalles, orderly marshalled all ouer a Crimson-veluet Caparison; you would sure haue taken him for the Sonne of *Mars*, or Seruant of *Honor*: On his left Arme hee ware a Scarfe of Orenge curled Cipers all ouer tufted with Womans haire, made fast vnder buttons of Gold, quadrated with rich Diamonds. This *Gliranda* bestowed vpon him, as assuring shee would spare neither Hayre, nor Heart, to forward the enterprife. Last of all followed diuers companies of his Armie, not in mistrust of any vnlookt-for surprysing, but to giue the King notice, their obedience vnto him was not altogether forced.

Thus is the comical Shew presented, and many sportiue obseruations streamed about in a smoth channell: But now enters Death and Destruction to bring in a Tragedie, and the Princes summoned to doe their deuoir, with a gallant speedinesse make a stop in the midst of the race; so that what with fulnesse of their Strength, the swiftnesse of their Horses, the surenesse of their Armour, the cunning in their Deuision, and their iust Meeting together: the Launces were weary of their length, and the Knights might for neerenesse imbrace one another: But this was soone forgotten

Trebizond.

ten, and their vnsheathed Swordes put them in minde, they were drawne to some purpose: so began a gallant Turny, which likewise had his passage; till *Medormus* quietly gathering vp the raines of his Horse with his Bridle hand set him againe loosely forward, and indeed was the first, which stroke a blow of aduantage; wherein if hee had not ouer-liberally yeelded to his haste, it had made an excellent tryall of the deliuey, whereas it now slid by without any setled damage: But when *Anzitemus* felt him selfe burdened with smart and shame, hee reprehended his slacknesse, and set a taske on his courage to requite it, which by this time, made anger follow apace; yet loth to strike him behinde, and vnable to wheele about, with a reuerffe he hit him on the side of his head, & coming fortunatly forward, stroke him againe, as if hee meant to tell him, there was two for one. Quite was *Medormus* out of patience, and so put an action of distemperature in practise, by bearing his Shield ouer his Sword with a maine careere at his aduersarie, who apprehending the mischiefe, fortunatly receiued it on the outside of his; which vnable to resist the force, vnwillingly deuided it selfe, and *Anzitemus* was glad he escaped so, supposing a slender losse sooner recouered, then a greater, which made him imploy both his warinesse and diligence the better, that hee desisted not, till *Medormus* best defence was broken, disoyned, and vnable to stand him longer in stead; who

Trebizond.

by this meanes without a Shield, was somewhat amazed at his Aduersarie; yet scorning to giue any such notice, hee rayfed vp him selfe finding his Horse much distempred, and acquainted with the property of the distemperature, made a wonderfull close, not idle from imploying his Sword to the best purpose, inso much you would haue sworne the Beast had been taught to fight: For with byting, flinging, striking, shouldring, in despite of resistance, hee bare *Anzitemus* Horse and Man to the ground; wherein hee had made his Master great, yea ouer-great recompence, if *Medormus* presuming to defeat him further, had not ouer-hastely followed, and by some misfortune accompanied him in the disgrace: which *Anzitemus* tooke in good part, and with a new chearefulness auoyded his combersome burden: so though Mischaunce made him first fall, yet as good chance helped him first to rise; whereby it appeared, that he had a Sword and halfe a Shield, against a Sword alone: yet was this Sword so well handled, that neither *Anzitemus* Armour, nor other additions to his courage, could preuent a forcible entrance into many parts of his Body, whereby the smart, and losse of blood, begged releefe at his hands, and in a manner challenged him of vnkindnesse, that would suffer such a disgrace: This turned anger into furie, and the Prince aduancing himselfe, pressed neerer and neerer, vnlaed the broken Strappes and Tyings, and made a checkquer partition

Trebizond.

sition of his Taces and Citrats. Thus continued the Fight with generall amaze of the beholders, and reciprocal damage to them selues: and had not *Anzitemus* shewed some prerogative in beeing better Breathed, as hee was better Armed, *Medormus* might haue equalled him both for strength and courage. For when hee perceiued that the detraeting of time, would be disaduanragious to him, with a strange sodainnesse hee helped his Sword with the strength of both his armes, and stroke at *Anzitemus* head, and doubling the blow, made the Helmet giue way to a wrong seisure, whereby (but that the fortune of flying asunder slipped the force on the Gorget) the same hand had reached the Crowne of *Media*; yet diuine reuolutions determined otherwise, so that *Anzitemus* recouering ayre, summoned all the friendes of vallure, *Medormus* *Slaine.* and making a strong party, with a violent thrust ran him through by the left Groyne. Thus had Death an vnkinde entrance, and hee (if there had been hope to the contrary) a willing vnwilling victory.

But no sooner held Iustice vp by this meanes, her Iustest Ballance with an impartiall Arme, but an vnfaired remorse constrained the company to cry, the Gods preserue *Anzitemus*, the Gods saue *Artabanns*: who now hasted to the protector of his life and dignitie, with an obsequious ceremony, had not the other disclaimed it, vrging only the pardon of *Gliranda*, which she with a scorne re-

Trebizond.

icted, for assured of her husbands death, bad death goe forward : and entertaine her for a slaue, that would not be the friend of life : so stabbing her selfe, left an instace of Trayterous ambition worthy lie rewarded.

*Gliranda kil-
keth her selfe.*

*Anzitemus
meditates
on his owne
affaires and
his fathers
imprisonment.*

THis was for the manner & the parties querimoniall, but soone ouerpassed, in regard *Anzitemus* feeling his wounds begin to coole inforced their best care toward him, and so by the skilfull & fortunate Surgeon receiued presently some ease, & that hasted them to the Cittie, where the applause of the people, his welcome, and Triumph was so magnificent, that he seemed unpained in his paine, & acknowledged sufficient satisfaction, though his debt to nature had been payed in the bargain : But by that time the woundes of his body began to heale the corasues of his minde craued some cataplasme, as his owne businesse, *Armenias* troubles, and *Artabazes* captiuitie : all which, like the humble sutors for a friend in distresse, pleading to a King his merit, and how well bestowed his fauour should be toward him, vrged *Anzitemus* to goe the next way : whereupon hee counsayled *Artabannus* to recall his Forces out of *Persia* ; reasoning, that a vertuous Peace, was to be preferred before an vniust Warre ; and concluding to offer *Astages* a present of euerlasting Amicitie, by matching *Roxana* his Daughter to *Darius*,
Artabannus

Trebizond.

Artabannus Sonne. Neuer was Counsell better bestowed ; for though *Anzitemus* thought by this contract, to reduce his confused businesse to some forme, and so to be able to circumuent *Cleomidas*, where soeuer hee lurked ; or at least to redeeme his Father : yet they apprehended it, as the voyce of some good Angell for their happinesse, and without more adoe, elected the Honourable *Mulcasses* to the Embasie ; by whose Commission, *Adelphus Artabannus* Lieuetenant generall in *Persia*, was against his will discharged, because in deed the Souldiers were disappoynted in their expectation, as euer louing better Booty and Spoyle, then Pay, or strict Obedience to home Commanders. But certified of *Medormus* treasons, and how honourably *Anzitemus* had behaued himselfe, they quickly returned to the sweet walkes of loue and dutie, and allowed *Mulcasses* authority : So *Adelphus* leasurely gathered vp his Army, and yet departed not quite out of *Persia*, till hee vnderstood *Astages* answere ; who keeping his Court at *Susiana*, (whither hee had withdrawne his Forces to garison) entertained *Mulcasses* as a Messenger of peace ; and after audience, limited a time to receiue his satisfaction.

But after he was fully dismissed, the monstrous enemies of Prosperitie, Enuie and Wrath made an onfet against the Kings honour, and so battered the citadell of good thoughts, that hee could not depreesse his malice without discouering it thus to
his

Trebizond.

his Councell,
 " My Lords: I am sure, you will not be so sparing
 " in your regard toward the renowne of *Persia*, and
 " my Honour: but you remember the disgraces of-
 " fered my fathers house by the first *Artabanus*,
 " who many yeeres turmoyled with a Ciuell-warre
 " our Country, and denied our right to this King-
 " dome: and now you see *Artabanus* his Sonne, as
 " his Father against the Law of nature would haue
 " disappointed vs, against the Law of nations, hath
 " intruded himselfe, my auncestors cast cleane out
 " of doores by a mutinous rebellion, and I not per-
 " mitted the fastie of my hard gotten peace: yet you
 " see Iustice hath taken my part a little and Fortune
 " openeth now the doores of a further recompence,
 " I meane the Croune of *Media* it selfe; but how?
 " not by base relaxation and accordance to their
 " wills, but by our owne vallures, and preuailing ex-
 " cursions, pressing now forward, as if a Tree cutt
 " to the heart and hanging by a small hold were
 " with a strong push to ridd the workman of more
 " labour: Let vs therefore sooth this opportunitie,
 " and catch the Goddess by her goodly foretop, leaſt
 " she take in scorne the disdain, and we prepos-
 " terously repent the negligence: But the most of his
 " Councell interposed their negatives, and forecaſt-
 " ing the benefits of a flourishing Common-wealth
 " through sweete peace, deciphered the mischiefes,
 " yea the miseries of the best warre. Then *Aſtiages*
 " replied, the Honor of a King was more then a
 Million

Trebizond.

Million of liues, and the Gods had appointed them,
 their vicegerents, sometime like good stewards to,
 husband their plenty & encrease their inheritance,
 sometimes like seuerer Maisters to correct offen-
 ders and to be the scourges of Inuorath: howseuer,
 he would not remaine ouerinsulted by the wrong
 of an other, but be famous in after ages for some
 exployre of his owne: They againe inferred that
 contentiones arose from prestigious spirits which
 delighted in the blood of men, that their late feares
 of desolation and aduersitie were not yet worne
 out, that plentie like an Orphan went mourning
 in the streets, and that his election to the Diadem
 challenged no such bondage at their hands, be-
 cause they well hoped in his conformity to good
 purpose, and had reſailed with *Artabanus* in the
 promise of the Kingdome; but this put him be-
 yond all patience, as euer ſtomaking the house of
Media, and watching an opportunitie to be re-
 uenged, though indeed the first error proceeded
 from the incontinencie and tyranny of *Persia* vpon
 this occasion.

O *Ormisdates* not long since King of *Persia*, The story of
 hauing matched with *Gartiscola*, *Artaba-* *Ormisdates*
nus *Oranes* Mother of *Media* matched her and *Dama-*
 likewise with Noblesse of birth and *floris.*
 minde, and by reason of their loues, the Kingdome
 like a well manured Ground, brought forth en-
 crease

Trebizond.

crease of much happinesse, to the inestimable enriching of the possessor: For although the Queene was barren of her body, yet her inward excellencies so flourished, that they added life to good conceite toward her; and indeed moderated to the admiration of diuers, and the honor of the King, that wanton libertie, which such a Prince in emoying many concubines, presumeth on. But the oldest Wood doth soonest burne, and *Ormisdates* in his declining age was soonest allured to lust-breaking faith, and did degenerate from himselfe; I meane stood not so strongly on his Guard of vertue, when there was expectation of settled humours, as in the heate of youth when the errors of life might haue passed with excuse: For as he passed through the streetes of *Magranopolis* to celebrate the feast of the Sunne, he cast his eyes vpon a window, wherein a Lady (at lest her outward shew bare the same record) fate with a countenance compounded of cheerefull affability, and lowly modesty, little thinking, that cunning had taught her eyes both to allure, and draw compassion, that experience had brought her countenance to the vse of many changes, that necessitie had made her tongue deny, where she wished, and demand, where she knew there was deniall; that time had wrought her heart sometime like waxe to melt with the warmth of desier, sometime like stone to be hardened with disdain: & that custome had frustrated her demeanor Matronlike, if there were

Trebizond.

were occasions of sobriety: Courtlike, if great estates importuned, and fantastique, if there were inducements of wantonnesse.

This was *Damastoris*, a woman of reasonable good Parentage, of reasonable good yeares, of reasonable good estate, a Widlow childles, and wealthy, two helpes in all conditions and Common-wealths; and a wanton taking the benefite of her time: and belike finding inconuenience in the obedience of one man; would not so subject her youth and liberty any more; whereupon shee made vse of her experience, and indeed ouerliberally satisfied her pleasure: Yet with that delicate conueyance, that the fault seldom appeared, and if it did, could not be vrged against her. With her *Ormisdates* fell in loue, or at least in such liking, that hee perswaded him selfe it was loue; and to perswade her this yet was the doubt, the means of access, hee not able to come to her without speciall notice taken, and for speciall purpose; shee not likely to come to him, neither willing to attende in Court, nor hauing cause of Petition or complaint: At last Desire bred Imagination, Imagination Conceit, Conceit some Disquiet, and Disquiet must needs haue Redresse: Now when Princes come to seeke Redresse, I hope no man will imagine, that any worldly means can be wanting; and when the King of *Persia* importuned dispatch, who would not? Nay, who did not endeavour to please and to please him? yet heerein

Trebizond.

hee onely imployed *Pasquito*, a man of reasonable comelinesse, exceeding good behaviour, delicate elocution, settled experience, (as hauing all his time like a cunning Marchant, seene many Countries, and neuer daring to venture his Wealth in one Shippe) and honourable secrecie such a qualitytie that sometimes all other good partes sayling it simplie preuayleth: who at the first, pleaded many excuses to the King, of disgrace in the action, hazard of preuayling, & so incurring his displeasure, danger of temptation, ielosies, mistrustes, and the cunning of Women: At last the king commanding, or he being willing to obey, *Pasquito* furnished him selfe, and came to *Damassus* with all the graces of a Princes solicitor: first beginning with her owne worth, that shee did Beautie wrong, to keepe it like a Flower in a close Potte, making no vse either to please the scent, or the sight: that shee was a present for a mighty King (and peradventure a King indeed did like her. (This hee sayd, to make her inquisitiue, knowing Women were subject to curiositie) that he had heard and knew shee was Wife, and therefore would not refuse the fortune was toward her; and that hee came from *Ormisdates*, who wished well vnto her, and had sent a Present of kindnesse by him; so that if hee were not an unworthy Messenger, and a man hateful, it could not choose, but shee must apprehend the blessing meant. This was vttered in so good a fashion, that though shee had knowne, how to haue reprooued Incontinencie, yet could shee not much

Trebizond.

much mislike him, that did but his dutie to his Prince; nor the King, that offered fauour to his Subiect; nor her selfe, for being solicited by the mighty *Ormisdates*: But with a kind of abashed drawing backe, rather studying to contriue her businesse to the best purpose, then willing to entertaine any cause of mislike, shee yet made him beleue, there was cause of mislike, saying, (and almost weeping in so saying) that the King wronged her much, to suppose shee would make sale of her Chastity; that hee wronged her more so to motion her dishonour, hauing neither seene nor heard any tokens by her of immodesty. All this, sayd *Pasquito*, is confessed: yet, quoth hee, the loue of a King is of that prerogative, that hee protested, it was more for her owne sake, then the Kings satisfaction hee came thither; and so by degrees of insinuation, fell to appeasing her; from appeasing to perswading, from perswading to counsayling, that howsoeuer she determined (which sayth he, I will not vrge further against your vertuous resolution) it were not amisse to speake with the King. Heere shee stopped againe, falling to the examination of particulars, how, when, and where, the King should take notice of her? All which, he certified with excellent circumstances. Then she made many doubts of the Queenes ielousie, the Courts opinion, and her owne iourney. Nay, sayth hee, if you vouchsafe me the Author of this good Newes to my Prince, neither Queene, Court, nor your selfe,

Trebizond.

selfe, shall know your selfe, or once haue cause
 to entertaine the attributes of Ielousie. Thus it
 was concluded, that shee should bee disguised
 like a Merchant of *Arabia*, and so vnder co-
 lour of the sale of rich Jewels haue secret confe-
 rence with *Ormisdates*, and this shee did with that
 gallant demeanor and attractive, that the King
 was rather raiſhed then enamored toward her,
 yea shee behaued herselfe so well, that at a second
 meeting he promised to inuest her a Dutches, and
 if he had issue by her to proclaime him heire to his
 Kingdome, which was performed accordingly:
 For with in one yeere after, shee brought him a
 sonne named *Ascrasapes*, and he thought himselfe a
 happy man to be the Father of a Child: This
 made him dote on her the more; and that made her
 deale with him the cunninger: so that the Queene
Gariseola seemed altogether forgotten, and her
 former deserting was ouergrowne with the
 rancke weedes of a Strumpets flatterie, which shee
 could not but repine at: yet at the first, shee gently
 behaued her selfe, till finding the nature of some
 things, as Nettles and Burres to sting the sofer by
 the softer handling, shee remembered her great
 birth, and plainly told him the wrongs done to
 her and her house were intollerable; and that shee
 would be reuenged both on the tother and the
 Bastard: this incensed the king, and mingled with
 the Counterfette feare of *Damastoris* contriued a
 strange course, which was by deuorce (vnder co-
 lour

Trebizond.

lour of barrennesse) to be seperated from her, nor
 desisted he so: But as a man tumbling downe a paire
 of Staires neuer insfalling till he came to the bot-
 tome, did he cause the same resemblance in the
 Queene, absolutely putting her by all gouernment,
 and proclaiming *Damastoris* in her stead. But when
Artabanus Otanes her Sonne vnderstood of these
 proceedings, the indignitie was too hainous to
 tolerate, and the reuenge too difficult to attempt:
 yet something must be done to keepe his Honour
 intigrate, and his Mother from so strange infamie;
 wherupon without further ambagie, finding him-
 selfe vncapable of the Scepter, by reason that the
 Lawes of *Persia* debarred a Stranger (which yet
 they afterward went about to disanull) and vnable
 to make a conquest in regard of home incum-
 brances, hee determined to cast it on some other,
 whose neerenesse and abilitie might second the
 enterprife. To this counsaile was *Tantaxes* called,
 a Noble man of *Persia* of the honourable family
 of *Odonates*, and next heire to the Crowne; to him
 did *Artabanus* inferre the scandall of the King-
 dome; the wicked life of *Ormisdates* infaming
 them all, the bastardy of *Ascrasapes*, an vnlawfull
 step to hinder his course, the desire of the people
 to haue reformation, (who most commonly vn-
 der that goodly shew, begin inuouation,) and his
 owne power to assitt him; touching sparingly his
 Mothers wronges, as if hee would leaue out some-
 what for him to remember, and so might be sure
 of

Trebizond.

Of his apprehension, which conformed to his wish: For *Tantaxes* ambitious enough of himselfe was willing to be thought worthy to be a Prince, not remembring the danger of that point, but now incited by such liklyhoodes, he gathered his forces and friendes together, sending *Artabanus* word, that if he would come in person (because he would haue the name of a King add credite to the action) there should not any oare want to rowe the Boate to what it came he liked.

Thus began the ciuill Warres of *Persia*, and this stone neuer left rowling, till *Ormisdates* house was cleane extinguished, and the Crowne at last vniited to *Media*: yet many battailes were first fought, and the seuerall alterations gaue only notice, that this world is a stage of vncertainties: For as *Artabanus* once brought the King to a narrow streight, and *Tantaxes* if he had followed his Fortune might haue ended the Warre, *Ormisdates* thus despighted in the worst manner made the wronged *Garriseola* beare the burden of his rage, and striking off her head sent it her sonne as a present: I will not say he lamented a remediless matter: but he prosecuted his reuenge and went forward apace, had not his owne misfortunes in despight of resolution recalled him, and this was the first reuolt of *Medormus* and *Gliranda* in *Media*: yet *Tantaxes* proceeded as well now to line as to raigne: For there is no *Medeum*, betweene an *Emperor* and *Traytor*, and in a gallant encounter shew the missed

Ormif-

Trebizond.

Ormisdates, and returned in triumph toward *Margranopolis*, where the incontinent *Damafloris* kept her Court, of purpose to shew the greatnesse of her state in that place, where once shee had liued in meane degree: But as hee was marching, a Brother of the Queenes vnder colour of Embasie from *Artabanus*, and crauing priuat conference, stabd him to the heart with a poysoned Knife.

Now was *Damafloris* sole Queene, and with her cunning and authoritie, handled her businesse so well, that by aduancing of some, bestowing of Offices on others, placing reconciled Friends (least farre off they might prooue dangerous Enemies) neerest her seate, and forbearing a time the visuall impositions of the Kingdome, her former error was forgotten, and they were contented to admit of her Sonne *Ascrasapes* for King: who by this time was able to conceiue of matters of gouernment; and seeing the miseries which the Warres had in a manner deuasted all the Kingdome with, polittickly matched with *Mitrea* the Daughter of *Tantaxes* slaine by his Vnckle, hoping by vniiting both the Families together, to leaue no scruple nor doubt for his succelsion. In his time many troubles were appeased; but what he purposed the strength of his state, was his owne ouerthrow, like a man determining to spit poyson out of his mouth, but doing it against the winde, it flyeth backe againe in his face, and inuenometh

Li.

as

Trebizond.

as ill: Which came to passe by having a Sonne, this *Astages* now reigning, which his Mother *Mitrea* brought vp very carefully, as looking on him with reuengefull and ambitious eyes to maintaine her owne greatnesse, and by his meanes to bring to good end, what shee had long since deuised. First then, the remembrance of her Father helped forward her hate against *Damastoris*; and that ended not without effects, and they procured *Ascrapes* to depose her from her regencie, by suggesting a conference happening betweene the Mother and Sonne, wherein shee dared to tell him, hee must respect her as principall cause of his Honour, and that hee was tyed in a kind of duty toward her, for aduancing him in this sort. Little needed the Spurre to a forward Horse; little needed *Mitrea* to vrge this against her, because hee tooke it in ill part, and the Sonne of such a woman had malice enough in store; which according to the Queenes owne desire, made his Will stand for a Law against both his Mother and her partakers. The second attempt was against the King himselfe; for finding her heart to stomacke shee was matched with a Bastard, for whose sake her Father was slaine; and her selfe more in pollicie, then honour and loue: thus confirmed, shee cared not what troubles were procured, or mischief might settle her minde; so that after many circumstances, *Ascrapes* died, not without suspicion of poyson, and shee in her *Phactons* flourish was

sole

Trebizond.

sole Queene of the *East*. But the Noble men of *Persia* casting vp the account of these strange distractions of the Common-wealth, thought by taking away the cause, to remooue the effects; and by quite abolishing the race of *Ormisdates*, (especially the offspring of *Damastoris*) and somewhat fearing the violent humour of the Queene *Mitrea*, determine for another King, and looking toward *Artabanus* of *Medea*, as well for his owne worth, as his Grandmothers sake, and Fathers losse; who though he perished not in the Fieldes of *Persia*, yet by his being heere, his troubles in *Media* were occasioned, nominated him to the place, and sent accordingly to bid him prouide for all their goods. Yet by the good behaviour of *Mitrea*, was this iudgement reuerfed, and *Astages* her Sonne appearing with some towardlinesse, made them repeale the former Edict, as it were pitying his youth, and that hee deserued no such punishment; but indeed the desire of satisfaction toward the noble house of *Tautaxes*, bound in their duty and obedience with stricter obseruation: So they all submitted to *Astages*, and misfortune weary of tarrying long in *Persia*, passed into *Media*, as you haue heard: in which time the Kingdome of *Astages* recovered some part of her former glory, vntill *Artabanus* tooke vpon him the burden of being wronged; and so lay in waite for reuenge; which hee went about, but was frustrated by his forces defeature vnder the leading of

Trebizond.

Adelphus and so shot another shaft of peace working goodnesse, by the sending of *Mulcasses*: but how he sped the Prince, *Sacromirus* heere can best tell: For as I suppose the beautie of *Roxana* daughter to *Astages* had then drawne him into *Persia*: Indeed said *Sacromirus*: indeed sayd the Duke; by your Princely leaues we will be sparing of this delight. For pleasure vsed with extremity looseth her sweetnesse, and best propertie: therefore let vs first dine and remember the Ladyes, as well loue exercise, as discourses; and yet the hearing of other mens matters doth little touch their owne prayes: so that day passed with the varietie of Courtly pastimes, and the next with the flying of Hawkes, the third with hunting, and the fourth made the time seeme very long, had not the company entreated *Sacromirus* to finish *Anzitemus* story: who thus began.

Sacromirus
some of *Hir-*
cania proce-
deth with
Artabanus
historic.

After *Astages* was in a manner restrained by the wilddome of his Councell: he yet most ingenerously scorned to be so courbed of his will, and enraged, put in execution a terrible reuenge, imprisoning *Mulcasses* against the Law of Armes, and surprising *Adelphus* against the Law of honestie: within the time of truce gathering his Armie together, and one night came vpon him vnprovidid, he yet vsed the aduantage of his Trenches, and some streight passages he had fortu-

Trebizond.

fortunately *Barracaded*: But alasse this rather sharpned, then rebated their courage; So by reason of ouernumber and home as sitid, they quickly made a breach into the Campe, and Triumphed with a notable slaughter: *Adelphus* dangerously wounded, and hardly escaping to be the messenger of more harder tidings.

When *Artabanus* saw him selfe thus subiect to the mallice of fortune, and that he resembled a man, who once stumbling neuer left reeling, till he came to the ground, or one whom shrewd Turnes, (as it were in sequence) followed after one another: his modest anger could not refraine from inuention, and passionat complaining against his Fortune: But when *Anzitemus* stomached the dishonor, because his Conncell consorted not with successe, and that he saw a further procrastination of his businesse, little needed *Artabanus* to trouble conceite, how to winde vp the Wheelles of this engine: For he importuned the iorney in person, and opposed against the difficulties obiected: Whereupon the *Magi* and *Haruspices* were commaunded to attend, who by their sacrifices deuined the greatest and happiest euent, and *Anzitemus* with a well-providid and sufficient Armie passed through all the borders of *Persia*, possessing the strongest holds, and after in three encounters preuayled against *Astages*, enforcing his retreat to the strong Towne of *Susiana*, where the place almost impregnable made him lye a while houe-

The story of
Anzitemus
and *Astages*.

“ ring like a skilfull Faulken, that with advantage he
 “ might seafe on his prey.

“ But this had report, added much to his glory;
 and that made the comparison betweene his true
 vertue and *Astages* ill disposition stand him in
 great stead. For when vntoward remembrance had
 layed open the recordes of all their strange acci-
 dents, which turmoyled *Persia*, they reckoned
 themselves in the rancke of vnhappy subiects vn-
 der an vnhappy King, the rather for that the Roy-
 all *Anxitemus* came orderly to demaund *Mulcas-
 ses* deliuey, and to propound the former articles
 of peace vnto them by the Maryage of *Roxana*
 to *Darius Artabanus* soane, and so to dismis-
 his Armie, and the disloyall *Astages* not only en-
 treated him with scorne, but barborously murde-
 red *Mulcasses*, & like a Monster in nature, brought
 him in feuerall Dishes dismembred before them all:
 “ and thus with a violent gesture, vngorged his mal-
 lice. Why base fugitiue? Art thou not the wret-
 ched Father, whom his Country scorned, and peo-
 ple exiled? what monstrous presumption hath be-
 “ sorted thee to terrefie *Persia* with wonder-making
 deuises, as if I were an infant vnder a foolish Mo-
 “ ther to be beaten with a Rod, and appeased with a
 “ trifell? Or dost thou suppose with thy vntoward
 “ proceedinges, by the helpe of my owne subiects,
 “ Traytors to God and me, to affright or dismay
 “ *Astages*, who if the worst fault will teare out his
 “ heart, and throw it in thy face? thou art deceiued,
 Vaca-

Astages
 murdereth
Mulcasses.

Vacabond as thou art: yet because you counter-
 feite a kinde of embassage, your iorney shall not
 altogether be frustraite; heere is *Mulcasses*; here
 is *Astages* that brought him; and heere is the con-
 tempt of *Armenias* power, and *Artabanus*, that sent
 him: Thus is your farewell concluded, vnlesse
 you meane to supply the defects of my entertain-
 ment with this cheare.

But what cheare could the vncheered company
 make; when the hideous spectacle daunted the
 stoutest courage? or what answer might they
 frame, that knew not how to speake, because
 they could not; nor could, because they durst not;
 nor durst, being so appauled? the company of
 his owne obedience strangely altered, and the rest
 sooner altdred, as hauing no cause to obey: yet
 doe not imagine they sate long to behold, or durst,
 as they sate, behold so vilde a sight: But rising in
 a mutinous turmoyle, spent the shortest time in
 exclamation, offerd such violence, as the place
 and number permitted: but in vaine doe they at-
 tempt further, for feare, and shame; or shamefull
 feare hath caried his hatfull body into some remoot
 corner, where affriade to see the mishappen deformi-
 tie of his minde, smothered all the motions of
 reformation with a working conceite of more
 mischeife.

By this time is the Cittie in Armes, as terrefied
 with a suspicion of their owne ruine, and most of
 them came to behold the Lamentable spectacle,
 wher-

Trebizond.

whereof the amazement made them fly one from another, notable to comfort one another, yea they mistrusted one another, had not *Anzitemus* rightly conceiving; what might succeed after such impression, thus recalled and recomforted them. O yee distressed and abused *Persians*, whose former renownes made *Asia* the store-house of Honour, and honourable report; now doth the fauour of blessed influence smile vpon you: now may you redeeme your captiued happinesse: now may you settle your desires of reformation. For, hath not your infamy by three discents been like a loathsome Leprosie to the whole face of the world, euery man hating, yet daring not but dissemble? How did *Ormisdates* tyranny make your Cities like a Burchery? How did *Scorapes* make you resemble Seruants watched by the eye of a hard-hearted Nigard, who no sooner take benefit of his absence, but loyter in despight, and with him to the Diuell? For you know, how he dyed & you know you nere cared to examine, How hath *Asiages* played the imprudent tutor with you whose rage ouercometh discretion, making wilfulnesse the author of Correction; and dalling with vngentle behauiour, such as otherwise would be very tractable: For you cannot deny, but the best haue been suspected, the meanest despised, the Cities ouer exacted and terrefied; the Countries abused, the Lawes infringed, the Fayth of Princes violated,

and

Trebizond.

and the respect of *Artabanus* had toward you inhumanely reiected. Lastly, (and would it might be the last of all your mischiefes) it is hee, which is the Author of all these feares, and with his owne hands (as you see) murdered *Mulcasses*, a Noble man of *Media*, an Embassadour of Peace: Yea, such a Peace, whose progresse had brought you to the Pallace of Happinesse; whose retardance warranteth your viceruine, and vnlesse you condemn this Monster for poysoning the Spring of *Persias* glory, and hate him, that durst hate Honour, Vertue, and Goodnes: *Armenia*, *Media*, and all the powers wee can make, shall contract against you.

To this enforcement, some of their owne Nobilitie present at the unhappines (whether taking in scorne the disgrace, as though they had been used for instruments of Infamie, or observing *Anzitemus* Maiesty and demeanour with delight) added their witness and confirmation; which made the company (euer flattering the preuailer who soeuer) submit to *Anzitemus* appoyntment, and vse the best meanes for all their safeties: whereupon hee admitted most part of his Forces into the Towne, and so by beeing Maister of the principall Seat of the Kingdome, thought it a good step to forward his businesse.

Anzitemus
forces admitted into *Susiana*.

But

Kk

Astages desperate of recovery, considering Anzitemus possessed his Kingdom, flyeth to Cleonidas.

But by that time the next morning had wiped away the dolefulnesse of the night, a new Alarm rayed the Armie, and disturbed them all: For *Astages* certified of this disaster, where-in his wilfulnesse had entoyled him, and how hee was in a manner caged vp within his owne Cittie, of which before his eyes a Stranger had the possession, tooke it so ill at Fortunes hands, that all enraged, hee thus encouraged his fauourites.

“ Oh (sayth hee) there is no trusting to any place
“ wee haue wronged; besides, our prouision can-
“ not long last, though the Hold (as wee may for-
“ tesse it) seeme impregnable, and to driue you to vn-
“ preuentable mischiefs when the enemy will in-
“ crease, as well in number as in Pride; and for-
“ mer disgraces set other on worke to reuenge, is
“ that I may not, nor will not suffer. Let vs there-
“ fore now set vpon them, as they are debating the
“ matter, and by fyerling the Citie, wee shall draw
“ the most of them to looke to their priuate and so
“ in not preuayling, preuaile to make our escape in
“ the hurliburly: For the rest, let the changes of time
“ determine, as they may. These speeches, and the
“ performance, had but one hower: for his Souldi-
“ ers with firebrands in their hands, came running
“ through the streetes, killing all they met, and ca-
“ sting them into euery house they could enter, and
“ although the necessitie of their businesse proiected
“ only escape for *Astages*: yet as if they had been
“ to Sacke the place, the miseries of such change suc-
“ ceeded,

ceeded, murthering all sortes without difference
of sexe or age, pillaging, taking of prisoners, rau-
ishing of women, and mingling a cruell victory
and dissolute pleasure together, till *Anzitemus*
overtooke them Whirling downe the streete to
the water-gate, where some forces had intercept-
ed their passage, whereby an equall mett man-
hood grew to the greater proufe, when the stre-
ightnesse of the place compelled to fight or de-
fence; and, *Astages* played his part so well, that
all men had him in admiration. For the troopes
were weakened, the arrayes broken, the assailants
slaine, the reticers, dismembred, and this new
fear bred new confusion: But when *Anzitemus*
had resembled him to a rauinous Maltie in a hun-
ger starued night, who careless of the owners wel-
fare breaketh into a company of sheepe, mang-
ling more with the chafe, then necessarie, he pref-
ered neerer to single him out, and his modest anger
could not reframe from thus reprehending him. Oh
insatiate homicide! What Tiger, cherished thy
infancie: or didst thou sucke the Teares of cru-
eltie, that thou scornest all vertue, humanity, and
true manhood: and soothest each venomous
motion with a false obedience to stubborne will;
surely the Gods are not such as our reverence
adores. If this impietie haue with her spring alike
repining Haruests, Nor are men worthy the earths
encrease, if they suffer this outrage, and let *Anzite-
mus* be for euer defamed; if he endenour not to
punish.

Trebizond.

punish such a wretch. But when *Astages* heard the name of *Anzitemus*, and knew that this was hee, which entred his Realme, with-drew his Subiectes from him, tooke his Townes, was now Maister of the Citie, and had druer him to these streights; the outward franticknesse proceeding from inward distemperature, beat the Earth, gnashed his Teeth, and bitt the very Corselet hee wore: Yea the rage changed his countenance to a dusky blacknesse; which shewing the strange effect of hate opened the ioynts, whereby the veines spurted out their fulnesse; and not able to proceed any further, then on yec infernall powers, hee made his Sword the Herald of a dangerous Defiance; whose force tryed, whether *Anzitemus* strength could abide it falling, or courage vphold him selfe staggering, the standers by imputing it both to Cunning and Fortitude, that that one blow had not finished the tryall: Now was *Anzitemus* put to the pollicie of an out-facing retreat, not in any diffidence of the Combat, but in hope of better advantage: For perceiuing his Adversary bent to ouermaister him, with active warinesse he bare off the burden of infinite strokes, but finding at last, the Tirant wearied with making too much trasse, and that his Strength beeing spent, his Furie passed with a kind of slacknesse, hee aduanced him selfe; and rebuking Shame increased his courage, that *Astages* might not auoide vnlacing his Armes, detiding his Shield, nor

wounding

Trebizond.

wounding his Body. And thus haue I seene a new made Fire tarry a while, vntill heate had dreyed the moysture of the fuell, and then in a sodaine flame to make reflexion of greater warmth: yet was *Astages* loth to discouer either disability or suspicion, but striving with an excellent courage, made it a perilous fight, and the perill bad them beware of the effectes, which was viter destruction. And as when two mightie Lyons hauing both their Females in necessitie of food, hapning at an instant on a little pray fall at such variance, that the scorne of distribution setteth them to be satisfied in the bloud one of another: So these as mightie combatants not acknowledging the least difference, determine, that life shall depart, before Honour be subiect to disgrace, wherby the strangenesse wrought an amale, and the manner a kind of delight. For they taking vp the narrow Rome of the streete, the rest had libertie to breath as if they seemed weary in the Butchering one of another, and apprehended the end of all their troubles in the end of this controuersie: But *Astages* seeing no hope of the conquest, and beginning to misdoubt him selfe, fell backe againe to his first resolution of escape, and remembering his League with *Cleomidas*, thought there was possibilitie to returne with sufficient fortune and Reuenge, if hee could get thither by any meanes: Whereupon, lifting vp the fayling legges of Courage with all the remainder of a wotne-out Furie, he whirled

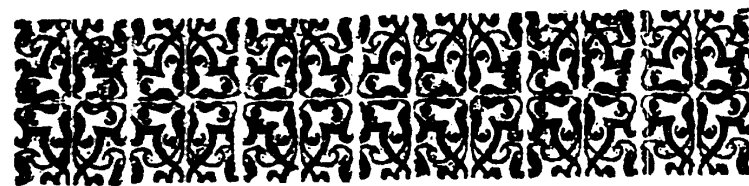
*Astias fly-
eth to his
Ships.*

at the turning head of his aduersary a blow of too great perill, had not his eyes twinckling at the brandishing of the weapon, bern a cauate to other motions, whereby a sudden starting made his right foote slip, and the earth yeeld, so that thinking to giue forward, the body measured the ground with his length; which *Astias* took hold of, and by crying *Anzitemus* was slaine, in despite of opposition made for the time a fortunate escape, every one confounded with the sorrowfull newes, and hindering one another with a numerous intercourse: But their feare and griefe with a cheatefull contrarietie is some reuered by the vprying of *Anzitemus*; and although they could not satisfie him with reuenge on the person of the King; yet did they recompence him with the gift of the Kingdome, and with *Pantgericall* ceremonies conducted him to the Pallace, not doubting, but as the Beare displeased with natures deformity by often licking fashioneth her young ones to an appointed shape: So would he deale with their dissolute Common wealth, and reforme what had mislead the company amisse.

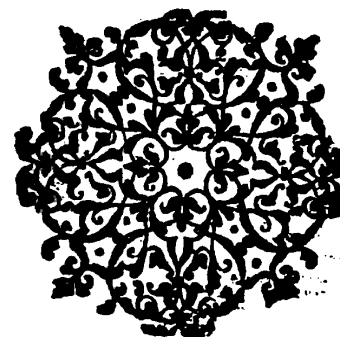
But because I haue brought him to so good lodging, and that he found the beautifull *Roxana* there, I will questionlesse leave him, as unwilling to enter into vnfortunate discourses, either concerning himselfe and father: or touching *Brizaca* who might be suspitious to heare *Roxana* named. Nay (gouth *Trezoboro* in his Sisters behalfe) things
past

past are past care, & therefore I dare auouch *Brizacas* content shal consist in *Anzitemus* future respect, but they I perswade my selfe, will well agree. So shall we neuer (replyed king *Zalby*) vnlesse we be thankfull to the Prince for his discourse, and entreate the gracious *Brizaca* once againe to im-
pose this taske on *Anzitemus*, For I proteste, I long to heare, by what chaunce the director of all chaunces hath consented, that this meeting should be recorded in the volumes of admiration. But *Rugio* sayd, there was no reason in the suddenesse: For he had a purpose to shew the Princes the Arbour, which King *Zalby* so much liked, and they after they liked, so much commended: in this taking the benefite of the next sunnes aduancement: the Feast was prepared, but till it please them to rise from their solemnitye, I dare not begin to trouble you with the discourse.

Finis libri Tertij



THE
FOURTH BOOKE
of the Historie
OF
TREBIZOND.



Imprinted at London by W. White
for T. Downes and E. Dawson.

1616.

Ll.



To the Honorable

Lady CHANDOS.

HONORABLE LADY:

However Honour hath appeased your
repinings, and as it were coojoned
your Birth-right with the courtesie
of England; so that it seemes a
disparitie to place you the last, that
are eldest in blood, and as worthy
as the best: Yet would I not exempt you from my
owne poore Wishes; nay I durst not deuide you from
your Mother and Sisters, least I might want the full
participation of that grace and Vertue, which I propo-
sed to my selfe from your fauour: I herefore I pray you
giue me leaue to warne all benumming despaire with
the Sunne of your Honor & acceptation; and amongst
your other Vertues, let me both affright Despaire, that
you will pardon my Errour, and strengthen my Hopes:
that you will entertaine my good meaning, though it
be but in the presenting of a Booke: For I protest, when
I ran away hoodwinckt with an opinion, it would passe
in the World as the deceit of Idleneffe, there was a plea-
sure in pretending your Patronage; and more then a
Hope, in naming my Lady Chandos, as a Mistress of
this Dedication.

Your Honors humbled in
all impositions:

Tho. Gainsforde.



The fourth Booke of the

Historic of TREBIZOND.

NO sooner was the Solemnitie of the Feast ended, and the conueniencie of the place renewed their desires to beguile tediousnesse with delight, but *Brixaca* proposed to *Anzitemus* the importunitie of the Princes to be made acquainted with his Story, and he surrendering obedience thus proceeded.

I cannot deny, but the fortune of that Victorie (if I add not an vnproper Title to the successe) flattered mee with better hope, then *Astages* tried in his election: Yet I protest, Ambition had no such scope, either to clate my frailtie, or admit of their proffers, although peradventure with my owne, and other auxiliary forces, I might haue awed both forren and domestick repining: So that I made slight answer to them, and vrged againe in a manner denied to be so incombred: But they supposing a further worthynesse by my abashed drawing backe oppressed me with reasons of their loue, choice, and necessity, and compared in my behalfe abillity, vertue, and delect: Lagaine remembering my fathers captiuitie, and the

Trebizond.

trust reposed in me by *Artabanus*, meant not to commit my Iayth to a strange government of deceite, nor betray a good beginning to contumely: Therefore gathering together the best reputed amongst them, I thus demeaned my selfe.

The Persians would choose Anzitemus king but he refuseth. I vnderstand (worthy to be beloued Lords) that some slender towardynesse in these proceedings, hath ouerwayed better consideration, whereby you determine to impose this sovereignty vpon mee: but Wisedome aduiseeth you to take heed

in a politicall body, what Head you admit, because if that exceed not in all aptnesse, the inferior members, no concord can continue a peace, nor conformity make a perfection: For though in a Monarchy settled in many degrees of descent, some one degenerating from the vertue of his predecessors, for those vertues, and those predecessors sake is not all together impeached: yet in such a kingdome, as this, if the place be to be supplied with a man from the choyse of others, neither must your obedience be abused, nor his wilfulnesse maintained: Let not then my defects so bewitch your opinion with a sparing regard of your felties; considering all that is, or should be in such a person (though I weare no alien and might liue without feare of any concurrent) are in me wanting: For to be more particular; a King must as well seeke to haue his minde guarded with vertues, as his body with armed Souldiers; and if it

Trebizond.

it be pleasing to call these by their names, it is convenient to know them by their natures; which (if I bee not deceiued) are to bee thus deciphered. *Affabilitie* without Affectation, least a partiall admittance keepe such next his person, as are noted with infamie, and a wilfull conniuecy ouerpasse the great faults of his Officers. *Liberalitie* with Aduice, that his Reuenues and Royalties may supply wantes without exactions, rather vpon necessitie vrging Beneuolences, then wantonnesse commanding Impositions. *Magnificence* with Reposedenesse, whereby the honour of the Court may extend to timely Princelynesse, either at the accesse of his owne Peeres, or entertainment of forraine Embassadors. *Mercie* with Discretion, least the Wicked insult through presumption, and Integritye complaine to see Vice vnpunished. *Recreation* with Iudgement, least Pleasures raigne without Limet, and the Common wealch remaine neglected and disconsolate. *Loyalty* with Secrecy, least sinne abroad purchase hatred at home, and like recompence cause Ielousie and Misdoubt to be depriviers of libertie. Concerning the troubles of disagreement, either in publicke or priuate hostilitye, he must haue *Depth of wisdom* to remember, respect, and foresee. *Height of Courage*, as well to embolden others, as defend himselfe, considering many times challenges are made amongst Princes: and one mans death, is the preservation of a Million of liues. *Largenes* of Bounty

Trebizond.

to honor, reward, and aduance, according to the
 well deserting, and not opinion of men. *Regarde*
 of Maieftie: that his state may strike a reuerence,
 and louelynesse a desier: and though last named
 (yet the cheifest of account) obseruation of *Ori-*
zons, wherby either hope of blessings will de-
 taine them in good courses, or feare of Iudgment
 coereate a bad disposition. These Iewells (noble
 Lords) are the Ornaments of Kings; wherof the
 fruition is not so plausible, as the want dangerous;
 such is the difference in greatnesse by descent and
 desert: but concerning my selfe, I am engaged al-
 ready in the like expectation of *Armenia*, and ty-
 ed to the necessitie of my fathers redemption; let
 me therefore neither betray your loues to negly-
 gence, nor entangle my selfe with such difficulty:
 but because your desirs shal not be altogether fru-
 strate, I doe thus aduise you. *Darius Artabanus*
 sonne a neighbour, a King and sufficient yea so
 sufficient (that I need not exmple his vertues)
 matching with *Roxana Astiages* Daughter will in
 the match ouermatch all your troubles, and new
 fashion your mishappen gouernment; which if
 you admt, as vrged by my selfe, *Armenia* shall
 be foreuer confederat, and *Anzitemus* an assu-
 red freend to *Persia*: besides, two such kingdomes
 vnited, will terrefie the greatest ill will, and make
 ample your mightnesse for ener.

To this, or the like purpose, did my speeches
 tend, whereby I somewhat pacified the first en-
 force.

Trebizond.

forcement; but had a sparing answere concer-
 ning *Roxana*: For there wanted not those, which
 replied, how her beautie and desert merited bet-
 ter at my hands, then so slightly to interest another
 with the possession of such life, and excellency;
 wherupon *Zaleppo* a cheife peere of the Realme,
 either stomaching my carelesnesse, or yet mak-
 ing me beleeue I should not leaue them so vnpro-
 uided, hasted to the *Pallace*, and returned with
 the *Lady*, as if he ment to exprobrate my sim-
 plicitie, that would ouerpasse a matter of such
 worth; and truly (most gracious *Brizaca*) such
 was the goodlynesse of her person, and the appea-
 rance of other perfections, that an exact amonist
 would not haue wished for better becomming:
 To be plaine, diuine influence ouerruleth mans
 purposes; for what a continuall presence might
 haue wrought, I know not; but Fortune euer
 Ominous vnto me, (except in my now happines)
 intercepted this progresse of affection, and by the
 returne of *Astiages* with that Monster of nature
Cleonidas, whom I shall neuer name with patience,
 ouerturned both the foundation and the building
 of my desires.

For *Astiages* stomaching the indignitie of the
 reuolt, and his owne discomfiture, presently fled
 to his ships (as he had before contriued) and put-
 ting into the maine *Caspian* the next day encoun-
 tred with this damnable associate; betweene
 Whom for the time passed some difference, the *Persia*.

M m.

one

Astiages
 returneth
 with *Cleoni-*
das who
 brought *Ar-*
tabanus into

Trebizond.

one impeaching delay, wherby mischance Triumphed to his great discomfort: the other, excusing the matter by the Battaille with my father, and that he also heard *Adelphas* was returned into *Media*, which offered him leisure to the new rigging his ships and supplying his men: but when *Cleonidas* had fully conceived the disaster of *Astages*, he had him quiet himselfe, and infused new life with the sight of *Artabazes* in Captiuitie, which the King tooke so passionately that he confounded two contraries, ioy and anger together: For neither remembring his vertues, nor greatnesse, nor allowing the present magnanimity outfacing his misery, with a sudden abruptnesse he plainly told him, that if at the first motion I did not deliuer vp the possession of *Susiana*, and depart quietly out of *Persia*: he would Torture him before my face in view of the Cittie: in which humour they Landed their Armie, and Soldierlike marched forward, surprising many places I had fortified, till a timely alarm gaue notice of their pretences, and occasioned expedition to intercept them.

But to decipher the variety of humours, which the accident wrought, were to be as tedious now, as they were troublesome then: Some vnder Colour of remorse began to vpbraid their disobedience, that so soone consented to the deposing of a King for a casuall effect of distemperature: some ignominiously cowards began already to prepare for a flight, and these the only bolsters in security:
some

Trebizond.

Some absolutely wicked respecting nothing but themselves, made a continuall reuolt to the stronger side, a pollicke preuention of their losses, though the obloquie remained: some with a kind of cunning spared both a reprehension of the enemy, and palpable flattery of the preuailer: some stomached the deiection of their houses, as rather wishing their owne aduancements, then repining at my successe: some neither hopefull to others, nor helpfull to themselves, onely wondred, that *Persia* should be so barren to elect a stranger over them; these men had willingnesse, but no power to doe hurt; some true Louers of the Common-wealth proclaimed mee Protector of the Realme, and maintained the charge of the Warre with their owne, and the Citties Treasure.

Now was I somewhat perplexed to be resident amongst so many vnstayed dispositions: yet vnwilling to receiue notice of euery slender occasion, I applyed my selfe to the time, taking a generall Oth of the Cittie, wherein I reserued the hostages of diuers Noble men: besides *Roxana* remained as a pledge for my security, and seemed contented, so her fathers life might be spared: but not meaning to trust my selfe within a place, where death had a hundred wayes of trechery, nor desirous to be affrighted with the mutinis and tumults, to which the people vpon euery alteration are incident: I chose from amongst them

Trebizond.

eight Thousand of their Principall men, and mingling them with my owne forces, was assured no man durst wisper mislike, nor slacke his manhood, when it came to the tryall: with these I encountred *Astages* and determined to put all to the deciding of one day; which he tooke in very good part, and made me beleue his resolution corresponded: For presently his Armie suffered a fourfold diuision, one part whereof attended the cariges, and secured certaine passages; the Reare was committed the trust of *Cleonidas*: the Battaille was ordred by *Pyragmon* a brother of *Zaleppos*, and the *Vann* (crossing the method of former directions) impatience made *Astages* himselfe to conduct: When the skout Masters of our Campe certefied thus much, I prepared accordingly, and would willingly haue giuen the first charge, in hope to single out *Astages* or *Cleonidas*: But I was not permitted to make vse of such forwardnesse, because as they sayd they would not hassard me in such sorte: so that *Alcastus* had the Honor of the first encounter, and the battailes in a manner stood idly outfaceing one another, by reason wherof I saw *Astages* comming gallantly to the charge: he was easily knowne by a basiliske on the Tope of his caske Crouned and crisped, and Round about lay many liuing Creatures dead, out of his mouth issued a scrowle contayning this Mott, In *Vissu Mors*.

his

Trebizond.

His Troope was well armed, appoynted; and as it should seeme, encouraged: for they assaulted the strongest *Cataphracts* flanking our foote, and performed actions worthy the best report; but too too preiudicate he was so quickly engaged, that Danger lifted vp her voyce, as if it came to tell him, Death was the reward of Tirany and Pretumption: But yet such was his fortune, that exclayming on the fugitiue *Anzitemus*, the banished *Anzitemus*, the traytor *Anzitemus*: *Anzitemus* quickly presented him selfe, though neither fugitiue, banished, nor traytor; and of purpose to rebate the wrath of the Souldiers (who by this time, had heauen him a peeces) offered a priuate Combate, if vpon the determination my Father might be deliuered, and the Articles of peace renewed.

BUt as I expected the returne of some assurance of contentment, *Cleonidas* acquainted with *Astages* distresse, hastned to the place, and vngorging his venemous stomacke, suggested hee would strike off my Fathers head, if I did not presently set *Astages* free. O Gods! that I liued to report my disgraces, considering *Cleonidas* liued vnreunged: For whether my impatience hindred the Organs of my voyce, or the Zeale of my well willers transported them to the enterprise, I know not; but I was not able by threats, intreatie, or promises, to preuent the mischief which

*The cruell
unfortunate
death of Ar-
tabazes An-
zitemus fa-
ther, in re-
ueng where-
of he follow-
eth Cleonidas
to Sea, and
there encount-
reth him, as
in the first
Chap. of the
first Booke.*

Trebizond.

followed: For they not admitting so childish a
 terrour, made at *Cleonidas*, & with some wounds
The death of enforced his retreat; the rest ouercharging *Asti-*
Astages. ges, gaue him neither leaue to repent, or exclaime:
 and not appeased with his death, added reproach
 to his fall: For a Brother of *Mulcasses*, dismem-
 bled the body, and threw the cut-off head at *Cle-*
Cleonidas onidas before vs all; who taking it in opprobrious
 manner, sware hee would solemnise his exequies
 with as equall Sacrifice: and in that impatience,
 made his passage through the Troopes, crying
 Reuenge, Reuenge; and contrary to all manhood,
 or honour, posted to his Tent, where the euer re-
 solute *Artabazes* was the subiect of his wrath,
Cleonidas kil- and thrunk vnder the burden of a savage hand,
leth Artaba-
zes. In whose vntimely death, the case was the more
 lamentable, because so sufficient meanes, as I was
 interess'd in, might rather warrant a recouerie,
 then suspend his hopes. But why trifle I my Dis-
 course, when it is a courtesie to tell the worst of a
 mans miserie quickly? So soone as his perfidious
 hate had brought this Tragedie to a period, with
 a slender repentance hee wished it vndone, and
 sent mee word of the remorse; which I taking in
 scorn, found the message rather to exasperate my
 reuenge: in which moode, I hastned to the enemy
 of my soule; who mistrusting him selfe, fled to his
 Shippes, and quickly make *Persia* ashamed of their
 trun repoted in his vallour: but the most of his
 Fleete was vnready, whereby hee was enforced

Trebizond.

to take such as he found, and ordred the rest to fol-
 low with speed.

Now had I time to condemne the trechery,
 suspect some plot of mischief, blame the vnable
 companie to intercept him, exclaime on the cow-
 ardice of the Souldiers, and make faultie I knew
 not whom, or what: Yet at last, Aduice recalled
 mee to suppose, that deferring would occasion
 him to be the better provided; and if hee once
 escaped, to bee settled in his strength; it would
 prooue an aduerture of more danger and difficul-
 tie to disscise him: I therefore allowed Direction
 no further scope, but made after with all speed,
 and embarked in the rest of *Cleonidas* owne Ships,
 which we enforced to serue our turne: But by that
 time extremitie was a little moderated, I began to
 cast many doubts, as how *Cleonidas* was attended,
 which way his resolution accelerated, and whether
 our owne company were sure to vs or no. These
 particulars by examining the Mariners, and some
 others attending in the Shippes, were soone an-
 swered, that *Cleonidas* had eight Shippes, and
 would with out doubt, make toward the dry
 land. Other questions were of lesse importance,
 and yet expected their solutions: so wee cast ma-
 ny of them ouer board, leauing as few to consume
 or hinder (as wee could) and seeing wee possessed
 twelue, nothing was thought on, but a fortunate
 encounter; which ere the next Sunne had moun-
 ted to the height of his maiestie, bade vs bee our
 owne

Trebizond.

owne Iudges of : for wee ouertooke the Pirate, who mistaking vs for his owne Company, somewhat slackt the winde, and in a manner taried our approach.

But when our defiance produced a strange contrarietie, neuer made his mischeuous conceit any shew of barrenesse, till now : For out of all comfort either by conuention or conuulsion to auoide the imminent perill, hee blasphemed both Heauen, Earth, and Sea, storming at the accident, as though hee had been betrayed to destruction, which almost made him open the dore to death with his owne hands : yet being remembered by some one better considerat of the many changes depending on the actions of men, hee recalled both Iudgement and Courage, and began the fight in such manner, as you see a Feast marshalled to make the statelyer shew by good order : For our losses were equall a long time; and as a man fell amongst them, another dropped amongst vs : as their Slings and Arrowes endamaged vs, our Stones and Engines slaughtered them : as their Fire-workes were throwne with effect, ours were not cast without prooffe; at last, the smallest Barckes felt the ieconuenience of many dangerous leakes, and irreouerably suncke with their Burdens before our faces; whereupon I commaunded to grapple, fearing indeed the Sunne had fled from our wretchednesse, and disdained to overlooke so truthfull a spectacle: Besides, the Night like an vn-

welcome

Trebizond.

Welcome guest comming both vnlookt-for, and vnbidden, approached to disappoynt vs, and made vs enforce our selues seeming most brauest, when wee could least hurt; and in the end of our furie beginning a new worke of woefulnesse. But *Cle-* ^{*Cleonidas and Anzite-*} *onidas* either of despayring the euent, or loth ^{*mans fight at*} to disproportion his tyrannous minde, euen when ^{*Seas in the*} Death seemed weary, commaunded to set fire of ^{*beginning.*} all; and heaw the Shippes in peeces; whereupon followed so lamentable a *Catastrophe*, as I thought no man happy, but such whom death had abiented from the unhappinesse, which many howers continued in pittifull cryes; and heart-renting exclamations; nor wanted there horrible seriches, and execrable *Apostacy*. To this the fire added a wonderfull terrour, appearing as if it determined to quench the *Ocean*; but most aptly I thought it a pollecie of Destruction, to light vs to Hell. And truly (my most gracious *Brizaca*,) though now dearer to mee, then my dearest life, yet were I not sure of the felicity collated by your selfe, I would not againe behold such another *Stratagem*, no not in hope of an other *Brizaca*: For I am certaine not foure men liued, though none escaped what was ten times worse then death; and how some diuine influence overlooked me, I know not; but I well remember, vnlesse I should haue haled death with my owne hands, it could come no faster toward mee: Yet it was my chaunce to light on a broken peece of *Cleonidas* owne Ship, hauing no

Trebizond.

other comfort, then in the meditation of my last end, resolving neuer to pollute my then cleane thoughts with any dregs of worldly compounds. In this manner *Placandus* sounde mee, and within a while againe I lost my selfe: but how that recouery chanced beyonde my desert, you can best tell, that haue payde the ranfome of my redemption.

Now by the blessed escape of those dangers, I sweare (quoth *Brixaca*) you haue affrighted mee with this Discourse; But seeing it is your pleasure to take hold of a new Comfort, and suppose mee the *Antidote* of these greeuances: Let your Hopes be neuer interdicted; and cursed be the occasion of infringing our desires: which was vttered with such vehemency, as if true Loue determined to tell the passengers, heere was his Mansion: For the teares distilled from her eyes, as if the hart melting within had sought out a passage for the moyture: So haue I seene thee swete Rose leaues quickly couered with a Still, and feeling a change by the working heate, drop out his delicate fauour amongst vs. When *Anzitemus* saw those excellent Lampes filled so vnkindly, hee stepped vnto her, and meant to dry them with his kisses: but not preuayling, he put his owne vpon them like Spunges to soake them vp.

While this extasie continued, diuers matters were debated betwixt the King and the other Princes, who well pleased in *Anzitemus* discouerie

Trebizond.

uerie, & transported to the admiration of his Vertues by considering his worth, presently made offer of them selues and powers, to the effecting whatsoeuer was expedite for his Honour. Yet (quoth *Trezoboro*) seeing *Cleonidas* hath commenced so often vntoward occasion of remembrance, let vs exact of your kindnesse a relation of his estate and condition. What can I deny such desert? (answered *Anzitemus*) and though you haue taxed mee with a dangerous imposition, as that I must aggravate my sorrow with the repetition of the cause, and awake Impartialitie to say the truth of my Enemie: yet doe I well vouchsafe to be thus his Historiographer.

After the aged *Sagaremus* of *Thessaly* was made acquainted with the honourable expedition of the *Ionialists* to *Taurica*, (where *Dianas* siluer Tree exposed such honour and reward in the atcheeuement) in manner of a fatherly exhortation he counselled his sonne *Armenus* to make tryall of Fortunes curtesie amongst the rest, who more forward, then fortunate prepared for the iorney, and was enrowled amongst the other Princes to accompany *Telpinas* (whom the casting of Lotts had made their Captaine in the enterprise:) Now by that time the Soldiers had taken possession of the Harbour, and *Telpinas* was newly settled in *Cherona* aduising how

The story of Cleonidas and Artaxata: with Armenus taking her part possessing the Kingdom and denouncing the Country.

Trebizond.

to proceed : *Artaxata* a *Queene* extract from the greatest bloud of *Cilicia* and the spacious Countreyes vnder the Mount *Taurus*, came in person to the Court, where this Noble assemblie kept residence, and had by this time filled all *Asia* with wonder at the attempt :) and like a Prince in whom a magnanimous Countenance seemed the Ornament of an *Heroicke* spirit with her associat affabilitie, neither manlike, nor effeminate thus excused her selfe.

" I am come to thee (thou Honorable *Grecian*) induced, as much by the hope of thy virtues, as fame of thy actions : For this is subiect to alteration by the reporters partialitie : that remaineth like a squared die euery way cast standing vpright, I will therefore firme this Anchor on the sufficiency therof, not doubting but to moue some spirit to add to his owne Honor and my glory, when he shall vnderstand a woman, a Virginn, a Queene, is wronged and in distresse : For true Nobillity is decipherd in those famous exploits of releefe, not in vaine ostentation or enticementes of ambytion : So long then hath my fathers house continued in prosperitie, that either the Godes enuied our established mightynesse, or Fortune (stomaching the razing and subuersion of *Colossus* a Temple once dedicated to her) consented to haue this neglect or rather contempt punished, and performed it with the indignytie of a Trayterous reuolt, at such a time, as when Maie-

stie

Trebizond.

stie scorned the presumption of a Subiect, and Loue fled from an vnkind Compulsion : For no sooner was my Fathers Exequies celebrated, but my estate bade mee step into the Chaire of Controulment, wherein I prepared to sit with the applause of all my Subiectes, had not *Cleonidas*, an ancient enemy to the peace of many Prouinces, perswaded an inuiolate perpetuity, if I would admit of his loue, which (as he sayd) proceeded from the fountaine of true Desire, and acknowledging my Vertues : But I tooke it otherwise; that the greedynesse of Ambition had taught him a politticke lesson of passion, and rather hasted him to counterfeit his liking; which made mee impugne the forwardnes, and not without some tearmes of reprehention (yet farre from reproch) dismissed him, as if I expected a further corroboration of my estate. At last vrged againe with a kind of presumption, or rather carelesnesse of my Royaltie, in a quiet manner of disdayne I assured him, I neither feared his Mallice, nor regarded his Fauour; but in despite of Confederats, would haue him an exemplary obedience to the rest of my Subiects.

This he tooke ingreat reproch, and soone made apparant the Bartenness of the ground, wherein the Seedes of his loue were set: For vnder Colour of indignitie to the Realme, that such a iurisdiction, and so many worthy men should betyed to the wilfulnesse of a woman, he raysed a dangerous faction.

Cleonidas
condemned
with
Colphurnus
a *Gyant*

Trebizond.

„ faction against me, and for the better countenancing his Treasons seduced, and with great summes
 „ of Mony hired *Colphurnus* the Giant of *Taurus* to
 „ be his Colleauge: a man or rather a monster respecting nothing but disorder, and loving no creature save himselfe: a man neuer terrified with prodigies, allowing religion and conscience but a pollicie to reſtraine the forwardneſſe of ſome
 „ bravely diſpoſed: a man implacable in his furie, and ouer inſulting if chance or miſchance afforded him ſuperiortie: To conclude, ſuch a one, as ſcorned my ſimplicity, and mocked *Cleonidas* ambition: yet gaue winges to this attempt, rather
 „ that his owne greatneſſe might appeare, then for any willingneſſe to aſſiſt the other. Thus in our daring manner they came once againe to demaund my conſent, which I proteſt I now referred more
 „ charyly, and reſpected him as ridiculous, to ſee a man profeſſe kindneſſe, and expreſſe hate, ſue for fauour, and threaten deſpight: wiſh peace, and procure Warre: propoſe goodneſſe, and diſpoſe miſchance: plead for remorſe, and determine reuenge, vſing me as ſome in-deſerect fathers their
 „ Children, who many times beat them without cauſe, alleading Conſcience, and the neceſſity of
 „ correction: But when *Colphurnus* heard my deſerting
 „ maſt, (onely maligning that his preſence wrought
 „ no better with mee) hee ſtoode beyonde all the
 „ limits of reaſon, and rayled at mee, as if the name
 „ of a Queen had neuer been heard of: which
 „ **HOLD**
 „ though

Trebizond.

279

though I was not ſo happy to preuent, yet was I ſo bold to diſclayme. Proud beaſt (ſayd I) whom the Heauens haue excluded, and the Earth ſuppoſeth burdenſome, though thy Senſes neuer participated any ciuill ſound, and the name of Vertue had onely the eſtimation of ſuch a word; yet how durſt thou neglect the due regard to a Prince, which the vnreaſonable creatures in their kinde fulfill? But ſeeing Nature ſometimes yeeldeth to Errours, that the perfect may be diſcerned by the vnperfect, I allow thee a Monster amongſt Men; and yet reſolue, neither ſhall thy body eſcape unpuniſhed, nor thy ſoule (if I may ſuppoſe it in ſuch deformity) vnpardoned. Thinke (honourable Lords) this much impeached his patience, and haſted them to triſle no longer; whereupon they ſpoyled my people, depopulated the Country, ſubuerred my Townes, and weakned my Forces; which with my owne perſon, they had viterly defeated, had I not tooke aduantage of the ſtrength of a Caſtle, wherein I remaine at this inſtant beſieged; and vnleſſe ſome fortunate Aſpect doe heere looke vpon mee, I muſt ſubmit to the vntowardneſſe of a heart-vexing neceſſitie, (as for the plate, I ſuppoſe it for a time impregnable in the continuance of their loyalties poſſeſſing it) and not without ſome ſtrange ſtratagem, or ſurrender to be quickly commaunded. Now ſuppoſe much more might haue been ſpoken, and much better: but if I be vnderſtood, I am ſatisfied; and if aſſiſted, com-

Trebizond.

comforted otherwise.

*Armenus
Sonne
of Sagaremus
assisteth the
Queene Ar-
taxata.*

Nay (quoth the *Heroick Armenus*) by your patience Royall Queene no more; and their Lordly leaues no lesse: then what soeuer the Gods haue imparted vnto me, to prostrate it before you; if then you dare commit so priselesse a Iewell to so slender a Guard, my sayth and endeavors shall surpasse outward meanes, and yet I make no doubte the Iustice of your cause, and the trophe of my reward shall incite me to effectuate any exployte within the reach of performance, so that if euer action were attempted for reasons sake, heere is reason vpon reason, and he an vnreasonable coward; that dare not make so honorable a progression: By this time her countenance was impest with a new forme, and her gallant demeanor bred a desier in the rest to send fame on their Errands: But *Artaxata* vrged no further, nor troubled *Telpinas* with other importunitie, more then that she graufied him for his vertuous kindnesse and care for aloting a reasonable company to attend her, and sending a Messenger into *Thesfaly*, to acquaint the aged *Sagaremus* with his sonns fortune.

In this Ioltytie made *Artaxata* her returne, and because some questions may be enforced, concerning the forny, let me answere; such was her imparadised beautie, attractiue comlineffe, gallant youth, sweete demeanor, and all gracing vertues that he seemed rather rauished, then enamored:

such

Trebizond.

such againe was his seemly person, firmesse of manhood, portly behauiour, delightful countenance, & all helping Courage, that she remained rather ouercome, then pleased: So that with thanksgiuing to the Gods for this happy acquaintance, and seemly desires to be acceptable one to another; they concluded the Sunpathy of conditions and liking, should tye the indissoluble knot of affection: yet lest he not thus, but with a serious *Armenus & Artaxata* enquiry of her affayres made way to better conceite of his wisdom: Vherupon she acquainted him with the peoples liberty, and the seeldome matched obedience in the libertie: the factions amongst the better sort, the alliance and priuiledges of her owne family, the manner of her fathers government, and lastly made a distinction betweene men Enabled for the Court, and enabled for the Common-wealth: she also imparted the ability, state and conditions of *Cleonidas*, the beginning of his loue, and the proceeding of her troubles. But (quoth the respectiue *Armenus*) by what meanes escaped you the enemy in this flight, I will tell you that too, sayed the Queene.

After the report of your Greekish expedition had liberally acquainted vs with so many Princes, so many men of Vallure, as accompanied *Telpinas* in the enterprise, and were then resident in *Taurica*: one time amongst others, as I was obsequious in my sacrifice with many impetrations, that they might be propitiatory, and many many

deuoc.

deuoc.

Trebizond.

devotions to expiate my offences, me thought the *Penates* beckned a silence, and bad me hast to *Cherson* for redresse, wherein sure they determined my delivery, for though the time of the yeere almost warranted better weather, yet that night and all the next day fell such a Snow, as if the heaven ment to shew vs some varietie: now by reason of a vault leting in the River to the use of the pallace, I conceived how to escape by couering my selfe and some few others in whight Linnen, and trulie I will not now boast, but with an extraordinary life did I then passe vpon the Bancke, which the enemy had cast out of their trenches, at such time, as for very pittie they would not put forth a *Sentinell* to watch, and so escaping to a place of more trust, then strength, I made such prouision as my hast permitted. But how now shall we enter (replied *Armenus*.) As for that, (answered *Artaxata*) the Influence, which hath hitherto ouer ruled; will not leaue this worke imperfect. Now by the protection, which followes vs, you haue ouer reached me (saying *Armenus*) in resolution, yet if it please you not to presage mee ill by feare or misdoubt, I haue thus deuised.

According to your description of *Colpharnus*, I geather his Courage and strength to be great, but his presumption and pride to be more, wherein such men goe forward in immanitie, not that they are vnanquishable, but because opinions is terrified with

Trebizond.

with their hugeness; and indeed resemble such Weedes, which while you handle daintily, will sting till you smart; but vse them with violence, they loose their force and efficacie. So that to offer priuate combate (which I am sure his insolency will rather deride, then reiect) may be the easiest course (though you may suspect not the safest) to reuerse your feares: For if I shrinke vnder the burden of a heauy disaster, perswade your self the old *Sagareus* will draw all *Greece* to your ayde: or els your patience must proue an vnkind vertue: if I peruaile, what would you desire more; but that I should preuaile? Heere a still manner of behaviour continued awhile, but at last brake vp with a yeelding chearefulness: for it rather proceeded from the amasement at his Vertue, then despaire of the successe; and yet was there great disparitie betweene them. Thus they approched the Enemies Trenches, who euery day expected surrender, or composition; little suspecting that the Queene was absent, or that these new come troopes were worthy the name of a Supply; imputing it rather to their madnesse and folly, which would wilfully put them selues into danger without hope of recouery: Which when *Armenus* perceined, and that they forbore violence against them, the next day like a Herrold of defiance; and yet summoning a Parlee, hee in this manner tryed their patience.

Although (ye abused *Cilicians*) mans malitiousnesse

Trebizond.

"ousnesse hath put in practise infinite prestigious
 "deuises, in so much that they haue not desisted to
 "rebell against Heauen, and with monstrous *Apo-*
 "stacie to fight against the Gods; yet haue not those
 "faults passed without punishment: For subuersions
 "of Kingdomes, stratagems amongst Estates, alte-
 "rations of Common-wealths, massacres of Armies,
 "and murthering one another, haue followed; witnes
 "the *Titans*, the translation of the first Monarchy,
 "and such infinite Warres as haue filled the world
 "with teares and reproch; and shall no doubt, ap-
 "peare as an instance amongst your selues, for trea-
 "son, immanity, and perfidiousnesse. But why tri-
 "fle I with circumstances? It is to thee *Cleonidas*
 "I speake; it is against thee thou Tirant *Colphurnus*
 "I enuiegh: the once wicked Rebel to Souerainety
 "and Beauty; the other, a monstrous enemy to
 "Maiestie and Vertue: and both as scandals and
 "reproches to Vallour and Honour. Was it euer
 "allowed, that a Subiect durst infringe the Lawes of
 "Dutie and Alleagence against a Woman, a Vir-
 "gin, a Queene? Was it euer heard, that a man of
 "Vallour, durst offer violence (without impeach-
 "ment of villany) to such a person, whose vertuous
 "Renowne hath moued the Heauens to pittie her,
 "as though you had been framed to terrifie the
 "world, and sent from Hell as Monsters in nature?
 "If it be so, by all the names of pretious Goodness;
 "by all the power of deuine Beauty, by all the
 "worth of pearelesse *Artaxata*, I coniure you re-
 "turne

Trebizond.

"turne from whence you came: If not so; I chal-
 "lenge the one to repent his Insolencie; the other,
 "to reforme his Crueltie. But if my speeches re-
 "semble an loathsome Potion, or seeme vnseaso-
 "nable, as attempting to compasse with a slender
 "Oratorie, what many Thousands of armed men
 "haue fayled in. Know then, that the royall *Ar-*
 "*taxata* taking compassion of her Subiectes, and
 "Kingdome, and to auoyde further effusion of
 "blood, offeth by mee the first borne of *Sagare-*
 "*mus* of *Thessalia*, a priuate Combat; wherein shee
 "submiteth to the event, so *Cleonidas* doe there-
 "vpon farceale the Warre. This hath the Queene *Armenus*
 "concluded with princely stedfastnesse. This doth offereth pri-
 "uate Com-
 "the Grecian *Armenus* confirme with resolute wil-
 "lingnesse.

H Eere the Soldiers stood amased betwixt re-
 "morce of their owne faults, and feare of their
 "commanders: but *Cleonidas* stormed the more,
 "as remembering the desert of the Queene, and his
 "misfortune to be reiected, or disappointed: and
 "*Colphurnus* raged beyond reason and (according
 "to the insolvency of such persons,) yeelded to the
 "motion though there came Tenn such Knights,
 "wishing the dispatch, least his fury might put in
 "practise further distemperature. But little needed such
 "hast to destruction. For the next morning came
 "*Armenus* into the field like a Knight well moun-
 "ted, and orderly prouided, expecting *Colphurnus*,
 "who made the more hast, by reason *Cleonidas*
 "found

Trebizond.

found the Armie. in feares at the accident: but when he perceiued the Gyant might not Ride, because of his highnesse, he quickly yeelded his Horse freedom, and very gallantly attempted the onser on foote: beginning the Battaille with that brauery, that the standers by expressed a very gladnesse to be eye witnesses of such spirit and life; yet when the contention grew betwixt wary nimblenesse and furious strength, and that the continuance detained them in suspition, it encreased both pitie and amasement: the one, least such a losse of Vertue should chance by ouermatching: the other to see a Giants force equalled; who indeed pressed *Armenus* with vnkindly strokes, but that *Heroycke* dexteritie auoyded the seasure, & sometime gaue him liberty and time to wound the other, whereby he spent much blood, and increased his impatience so farre, that he fastned a blow which strucke the *Prince* to the ground, to the terrour of both the Armies; who in their heartes wished him fortunate, and shouted for ioy at his recouerie: of which *Armenus* tooke the aduantage, and seeing there was no enduring long, aduentured a cloze, and had the chaunce to run him vnder the short Ribbes, and so made roome both for Death and Victorie to deuide themselves: Whereat *Cleonidas* blasphemed Heauen & Earth, rather now shewing his willingnesse, then sufficiencie to maintaine the quarrell.

By this time *Artaxata* discovered her selfe, and
like

Colphurnus
death.

Trebizond.

like the Sunne clearing the interposition of thicke Cloudes appeared the more glorious: so the Souldiers yeelded to mercy, and the people submitted as being before enforced; and because they would giue notice of their dutie for a beginning, with the same Water that draue the Mill, they drowned the Mill, quickly chasing *Cleonidas* in his retreat; and taking him by force, brought him bound to the Queene; who at *Armenus* intercession, gaue him life, liberty, and serled him in former estate, little suspecting, that courtesie to a Traytor, is a thankelesse office, and most commonly giueth but occasion of further hate and repining.

With this beginning was the whole Kingdome pleased, so that the Queene might publish her will with successe, and *Armenus* succeed with publication & goodwill, possessing thereby a gracious *Artaxata*, and a spacious Country, which by way of recompence and satisfaction was contented to change her old name, and to be called *Armenia* for his sake: In this as a thankfull steward vnder an Honorable Lord he dedicated two especiall places *Sagarena* and *Artaxata* after his Fathers and Wifes name, which in time grew to be Ritch, famous, and Populous Citties: but assured of the dissolution of any state without government, he established Lawes, as well to detaine the people in obedience, as to maintaine his owne prerogatiue, to which (because they seemed strict and contrary to former Customes) hee had much a doe to bring them,

Cleonidas
prisoner and
restored.

Armenus is
king and nameth the
Country *Armenia*.

Trebizond.

*Cleonidas
rebellet a-
gain and
dyeth.*

them, but at last, by pollicke insinuation, and true magnanimity the great men applauded his carriage and temprature, and the people like their shadowes yeilded to what they allowed: so that few misliked, and such as misliked durst not complaine, vntill *Cleonidas* rebelled againe, as reprehending his owne basenesse, that he had been beholding to a stranger for his life, but a sufficient discomfiture made him fayle in the attempt, and his death warranted *Armenus* peace and establishment.

This had yeilded a full recompence indeed, if he could haue preuented a double mischance: The one in suffering *Cleonidas* the sonne to enioy his fathers bad conditions with his estate; the other in being deuiled from his Royall Queene, whose life was now brought to an vntimely period by a heart vexing sicknesse; but heerein some supernaturall power wrought for the best, because now Childlesse, he after marched with *Tolmiranda* the *Assirian Sophy*, by whom he enioyed the fruites of his body in great towardlinesse, and continued the rest of his time in a gracious peace, had not time ripened the wicked disposition of *Cleonidas* the sonne, and hate as it were innated within him enforced many exorbitant actions, setting againe the kingdome in combustion, which at last was better ordred and preuented. For his places of refuge were leueled with the ground, his Lands and wealth confiscate, his Allies and associates vnder

*Cleonidas
the Sonne is
banished Ar-
menia and
becometh
a Pirate.*

arest,

Trebizond.

arest, and himselfe exiled the Kingdome, who otherwise might haue liued a glory too the kingdome.

These warres and *Armenus* life had end together, wherupon my father *Artabazes* began his Royall rafe at such time, as this *Cleonidas* entertained a conceite of reuenge by this course of Piracie, wherein thirty yeares continuance made him an archmaster; and custome in wickednesse so blinded him, that great faults were reputed slender, and small ones not so much as imperfections: but the chiefest proppes too this wicked life; were the confederacie of many Princes, and his owne wealth vniustly amassed, with which in this latter time he maintained thirty well appointed Ships, and amongst other *Stratagems* (as you haue heard) was beholding to the warrth full *Nemesis* for *Artabazes* losse, but whether deuine Iustice tooke my cause in hand, I know not. For the best part of my Fortune extended to see him cursing and raging amidst the ouerraging Billowes.

*Anzitemus
declareth his
fortune with
Roxana the
heyre of Per-
sia: and how
he was pre-
uented from
Marrying
her by reason
of his pursu-
ing Cleoni-
das at Sea.*

AT this Period *Anzitemus* made a stoppe, and king *Zaby* with the Princes acknowledged the delight of the story: but the great affaires in hand importuned a further matter then discourcing, wherupon it was concluded, that the most of them should accompany him into *Armenia*, as well to secure his estate there, as to

P. p.

continue

Trebizond.

contrive, how *Trezoboro* might purchase his reconciliation with *Mengrelins*: because if it were effected, it must be done by *Anzitemus* and *Brizacas* meanes; but the finding, how this businesse would detain them awhile together, ment belike to make some vse of the spare time, and therefore like a true Louer, stepped into the first path of Ielousie, & could not forget the short, and passionate description of *Roxana*, which caused her to vse a little cunning in the matter, and by making pittie a branch of vertue, she questioned with him of matters of Gouvernement, of Genealogies, of Pettigrees, what became of *Mitrea Astiages* Mother; and lastly, as if it fell in by chance of discourse, of *Roxanas* yeeres, how he satisfied the Princes, and how he could neglect such a proffer, as the mightie *Persia* contented? My only content (replyed *Anzitemus*) mistrust no idle disposition: For deuine appoyntment hath reserued vs one for another: yet will I assure you, such was, and I hope (I may hope) such is the preeminence of her beautie and louelynesse, that I protest excepting the incomparable *Brizaca*, she liueth peerelesse, and well deserued a better regard, then my businesse permitted; and because you haue stirred conceite, and by a Rauiishing presence increased that sweete delight, which your company euer affoordeth: I will once be humorous in a slender description of her, so the louely *Brizaca* finde not too many faults, & apply that to herselfe now, which

Trebizond.

which I am sure might be allowed *Roxana* then,

*What Cunning can depaint her prayes forth,
In whom appeared such exceeding worth:
The outward substance all at once behold,
And thinke the Gods a secret to vnfold:
Each part apart commend; then Nature will
Affoord thee choyse of her approoned skill:
The Head resembled some rich golden Spheare,
Which all the chiefeest Lines aloft did beare:
Yet round about the Paralels did meet;
So felt her beauteous Lockes euen to her feet:
The Face it selfe scarce durst a curious eye
Watch at the full: yet there we might espie
Fauour and Love ioyne hand in hand together,
To welcome a rare Guest Perfection thither?
This made her smile, & blush and blushing smile,
(The lookers on deceiued all the while,
As though two colours had for mastery strouen,
And White and Crimson been together wouen.)
The Necke did any counterfeite surpasse
In outward shew: for Princely life this was,
Shewing a way where Cupid vsd to stand,
Telling the lookers on, Venus right hand,
Cast vp those pretty Mounts, whose sides betweene
A pleasant Vally keeps delight vnseene,
Till it conduct thee to a bending Hill
Made like an Iuory Arch by curious skill,
Faire hanging ouer a well fashioned Dore,
Wherein are hid ten thousand Ioyes and more:*

*The descrip-
tion of Roxa-
na.*

Trebizond.

Yet Chastitie holdes sure both Key and Lock,
 Vnwillling that the Gods them selues should knock,
 For though Gods vse to Paradise to goe,
 Yet did they heere a Priuiledge bestow,
 That none might enter against Vertues minde,
 Least forc'd admittance prooue the cause unkinde.
 Her Body bolt upright in comely grace
 Outmatched Pallas for a stately pace: (thoughts
 Mounted on Horsebacke, you would sure haue
 Bellona had some gallant Battaille fought:
 Marching on foote, Diana could not bee
 Amongst her Nimphs more gallanter to see.
 With these, her yeares were like a timely Spring,
 Which in an ouer-ioying Hope did bring
 Her Blossoms forth, all happinesse assuring
 To him more happy in the soyles manuring.
 With these her Vertues did proportionate
 The qualities belonging to the state
 Of high Magnificense, that we might know,
 Shee was ordained a Princes pace to goe.
 With these, a Kingdome was a mighty Dower,
 A Kingdome full of Riches, Pompe, and Pomer:
 Then thinke I had good cause to wish her well,
 Who did with such great Priuiledge excell.

I protest (quoth Brizaca) you haue prayesd her well; but I rather allow it for a custome of Idleness, then Necessitie, and finde it vabefitting to Iudgement to admit of ouerpalpable Flattery.

What call you Flattery (replyed Anzitemus?)
 Assure

Trebizond.

Assure your selfe, that the Gods framing Man to ^{A circum-}
 commaund all the Creatures vnder the Sunne, ^{stantial com-}
 neither shuffled vp their workmanship, nor were ^{mendation of}
 so carelesse afterward, but with a great regarde ^{pleasing con-}
 sent him foorth to publish their glory; and for that ^{ference.}
 purpose gaue him prerogatiue of excellencie both
 in body and minde. This especially appeareth in
 your selues, to whom they haue vouchsafed deuotion,
 as finding time, and your owne vertues to
 perfect the worke, which they but began: And
 from hence proceedeth our resemblance of this
 outward substance, to a rich Treasure house
 made to secure more richer Wealth: Now, as
 Wealth is disperfed ouer the world to vse and
 good order, and without that lyeth hid like Earth
 within the ground: So your selues are left in the
 world to comfort and benefit, according to the
 fortune of him, that possesseth you to happy purpose.
 Heere then resteth the cunning and grace,
 in the meanes of the seisure, which I auouch is
 first wrought by the instrument, the Tongue: For
 though some haue made a principle, that a Wo-
 mans Eye doth guide her Witte, yet vnlesse occa-
 sion be offred to discover the liking, what good
 can follow. But to speake more generally; Are
 not Presents, faire Entreaties, and the causes moo-
 ning (your deserts) which must be prayesd, the
 ordinarie meanes of winning all Women? And are
 not all these like dead Ashes without liuing con-
 ference, besides the necessitie of conuersation, and

^{Presents,}
^{prayers, prai-}
^{ses winne wo-}
^{men.}

Trebizond.

the true regard of Natures excellencies in you alloweth vertuous courses to obtaine your fauours; which howsoeuer is determined; is yet begun with protestation; and when it extendeth to great persons, compelleth a further search, then in common Courses: For neuer was *Misanthropos* nor Tyrant so implacable, but beauty hath reduced: neuer was Beast so furious, but man hath tamed: Neuer was any thing so strong, but truth hath overcome: and how? by reason and sweete enforcement. Belike then (answered *Brizaca*) you suppose vs so simple, that we delight in vaine speeches; and because in Curtesie we entertaine communication, and would not altogether outcountenance you with disdain; we are therefore to be carryed away with lightnesse. (Farre be it from my frailest imagination (replyed *Anzitemus*) but to proportionate withall reuerence your vertues, yet vnlesse it be amongst Peasants, or wretched Parentes, that frame contracts by endenture, where loue melteth with the Waxe, and weareth with the Parchment, I see no reason, but to sue for goodwill, and practise the best meanes to establish (the happiest life) contentment. As for Princes, though they make no Prentishippes of their loues, yet in the violence are they more passionate, then another, like a strong body put to more paine in sicknesse, then a weake. But say there is inequalitye of persons, as many times it chanceth, (for Poets make loue blind,) I hope then the inferiour person

Trebizond.

person applaudeth his Fortune, and studieth with the helps of art, nature, and industry to demean himselfe. For it were ridiculous, nay inhumane; to see a sottish-man vse presumption toward you without insinuation and consent, which I neuer will esteeme happy, if there be not a preparing by discrete parle: besides, loue looseth his sweetest pleasure without appearance of difficultie; Indeed (answered the halfe yeelding *Brizaca*) I thinke of an vnfaired tongue as an excellent instrument to worke with, yet must no man goe about a Building without other prouision: For the greatest deceite is shaddowed by smooth Oratory, as we found the deepest places in the calmest Channels. Not vnlikely said *Anzitemus*, but because a villaine doth a mischeife with a Candell, shall we therefore vse no light? doe not so conclude: For I am resolved, that both contract of Maryage, and discovery of fancy are Dull enforcements without libertie of speech, and ceremonious complement: therefore blame me not for praying *Roxana*, and ratefying, she was a deseruer of all iustifiable desires: yet I protest the sorrow for her father, and her duety in the same, made me to study to pacifie her Corasues, rather then display the Colours of delight; and when I was vrged to sollicite a new Courte (which a messenger from *Ariabanus* to please my selfe emboldned) thereturne of *Asiages* with *Cleanidas* quight diuerted me, and so I reassare you, she was vnacquainted with my thoughts,

Trebizond.

the true regard of Natures excellencies in you alloweth vertuous courses to obtaine your fauours; which howsoeuer is determined, is yet begun with protestation; and when it extendeth to great persons, compelleth a further search, then in common Courses: For neuer was *Misanthropos* nor Tyrant so implacable, but beauty hath reduced: neuer was Beast so furious, but man hath tamed: Neuer was any thing so strong, but truth hath overcome: and how? by reason and sweete enforcement. Belike then (answered *Brizaca*) you suppose vs so simple, that we delight in vaine speeches; and because in Curtesie we entertaine communication, and would not altogether outcountenance you with disdain; we are therefore to be carryed away with slightnesse. (Farre be it from my frailest imagination (replyed *Anzitemus*) but to proportionate withall reuerence your vertues, yet vnlesse it be amongst Peasants, or wretched Parentes, that frame contracts by endenture, where loue melteth with the Waxe, and weareth with the Parchment, I see no reason, but to sue for goodwill, and practise the best meanes to establish (the happiest life) contentment. As for Princes, though they make no Prentishippes of their loues, yet in the violence are they more passionate, then another, like a strong body put to more paine in sickness, then a weake. But say there is inequalitye of persons, as many times it chancess, (for Poets make loue blind,) I hope then the inferiour person

Trebizond.

person applaudeth his Fortune, and studieth with the helps of art, nature, and industry to demean himselfe. For it were ridiculous, nay inhumane; to see a sottish-man vse presumption toward you without insinuation and consent, which I neuer will esteeme happy, if there be not a preparing by discrete parle: besides, loue looseth his sweetest pleasure without appearance of difficultie; Indeed (answered the halfe yeelding *Brizaca*) I thinke of an vnfained tongue as an excellent instrument to worke with, yet must no man goe about a Building without other prouision: For the greatest deceite is shaddowed by smooth Oratory, as we sound the deepest places in the calmest Channels. Not vnlikely said *Anzitemus*, but because a villaine doth a mischeife with a Candell, shall we therefore vse no light? doe not so conclude: For I am resolved, that both contract of Maryage, and discovery of fancy are Dull enforcements without libertie of speech, and ceremonious complement: therefore blame me not for prayeing *Roxana*, and ratifying, she was a deseruer of all iustifiable desires: yet I protest the sorrow for her father, and her duety in the same, made me to study to pacifie her Corasues, rather then display the Coulours of delight; and when I was vrged to sollicite a new Course (which a messenger from *Artabanus* to please my selfe emboldned) thereturne of *Astages* with *Cleanidas* quight diuerted me, and so I reassure you, she was vnacquainted with my thoughts,

Trebizond.

thoughts, and left to be a Lady of wonderfull expectation.

Anzitemus **I**N this manner did some dayes post after their preparatch to goe into his owne Kingdome of Armenia & after to present Trezoboro to the Emperour *Alengrelius*. as for the kind proffers of the *Princes* to accompany him into *Armenia*, hee woul not oppose against it: yet gaue hee reasons, that hee meant in no sort, to detain them from their home occasions. These poynts were mooued in the Senate of *Fortona* by *Trachinus* the Cittie Orator, whom *Philano* for that purpose had sent for, and had receiued his instructions to this end, to certifie the people, that though *Anzitemus* desert compelled the greatest regard; yet would not the *Duke* without their consent, so slightly part with so great a Summe out of the kingdome, as for the Leauge, wherby freendship and Traficke might encrease, he referred that to themselves: much time was not spent herein: For the Cittisenns interpreting the motion to proceed from the *Dukes* wisdom and loue were doubly drawne to consent, as well to remaine gracious to *Rugia*, as to seeme men of respect and abillytie.

Trebizond.

abillytie to *Anzitemus*: besides they offered a beneuolence toward the charges of this great entertainment (with such extremitye are they caryed; that neuer so little crossed in matters of wealth and superstition, they are hardly drawne without murmurings to triseles: againe quietly soothed with a meane allowance of libertie, they profusely offer their Mony, and applaud that, which otherwise they haue dared to contradict.)

Thus was *Anzitemus* supplied, and which prooued aduantagious vnto him, hee bargayned with certaine Merchants by great for his conduct, neuer troubling the *Dukes* Nauie, nor his Prerogatiue to muster vp new forces: whereupon with all conueniencie they prouided him fourty well appointed Shippes, and became creditors themselves for foure Months pay and victuals: In the meane while, the magnificent Company departed, and King *Zalby* to augment his Nephewes honour, gaue *Philano* in present possession the Prouince of the nether *Comagena*; which hee in great courtesie acknowledged: yet modestly respoyted the ceremonies of his enstaulement, till his returne. For hee would questionlesse accompany *Trezoboro* and *Anzitemus* into *Armenia*; wherein hee wrought a double contentment. First, the Souldiers and Cittizens were ouerliberally pleased, as imputing loue and care toward them, the motiue of this iourney: next, *Anzitemus* apprehended it to his comfort, not doubting but

Trebizond.

Philanos presence would keepe obedience in forme: besides the Treasure returned by so conuenient a Messenger would disburthen him of care and charge to make a particular viouage. Now are all thinges ready for the departure, and the Duke accompanied them to their Shipps committing their iorney to auspicious influence, so the farwell suffering a ceremonious diuision, gaue the one occation to returne, and the other to steape into the tract of worldly felicitie: but as *Anzitemus* studied to contriue his businesse, he stopped at this doubt, whether he should make directly for *Armenia*, or take *Media* in his way, where he was sure of *Artabanus* ayde, and the *Persians* loues: then againe remembring the Message of *Euphemia*, he supposed the seedes of dissention were buried past growing, and so he might be warranted of their true sayth: yet for all this to giue way vnto their opinions of his wisdom & gouernment, he called a conference, to which were especially desired *Trezaboro*, *Philano*, *Coranus*, *Bertofus*; as for *Ardemio*, *Mitranus* and *Obecam*, they thought themselves Honored in the matter, besides *Placandus* (whom he determined to fashion to the world, and bring his aged head with Honor to the graue) gloryed in the fauour *Anzitemus* began with. All these resolved him, that the fame of *Artabazes* death, and *Astages* ouerthrow, was alreedy diminished in *Armenia*; and that the dissentions betwixt *Media* and *Persia* receiued a period: only

Trebizond.

ly the Maryage of *Roxana* was deferred, as not knowing how he was affected, and therefore without doubt he might determine for his owne kingdome.

Wherupon they made forward apace, and accordinge to their expectation without difficulty (more then the wonder of his returne, because they supposed him lost in the fight with *Cleonidas*) Landed in *Armenia* at the River *Erix*, from whence by easie Iornies ouer the Mountaines, they came to *Armauiranda*, where *Euphemia* was resident; to whom the people vpon report of *Anzitemus* ariually had flocked on heapes, desiring her to stand as a guard betweene them and his displeasure, considering their obedience since, and the reuenge vpon *Gestarius*, who had opened the Dore of the last troubles. To these she onely wished the continuance of their loyalties: but to certaine persons drawne into the faction with *Olmus*, and of inueterate malice for *Cleonidas*, (who made her belecue they would be warranted their safety) she absolutely denied to bee compelled: For if they determined truth, and vndissembled duety, no doubt her Sonne (though *Artabazes* losse was irkesome to them both) knew what belonged to a remediless matter. But little needed these suspitions; for *Anzitemus* knowing that strange courses bred as strange alterations; and that in a good beginning consisted the hope of successe, proclaymed a generall Pardon, and

Trebizond.

establishing of all men in their estates, offices, and places, that would ratifie his succession.

*Anzitemus
returneth in-
to Armenia
& is invested
King.*

With this comfort was the whole Kingdome appeased, and for the better assurance of their faythfull hearts, they confirmed the prerogatives of his Maiestie, and conferred to him whatsoever belonged to a Kings person, establishing those Lawes, wherewith his Father and Grandfather had swayed the Common-wealth. The people brought in a guift of a thousand Talents; the Officers to continue their places, liberally fined them selues: the Nobilitie to renew their Immunities, sent many Presents: the Cities to strengthen their Priuiledges, disbursed great summes: the Gentry to aduance them selues, spared for no reasonable matter; and the Courtiers to purchase fauoure, exceeded in cost and diligence: But when the incomparable *Brizaca* was published their Queene, they passed in extremity of applause, and sacrificed to the Gods for restoring their peace, and establishing the Monarchy in such worth and royalty.

Thus was *Anzitemus* and *Brizaca* solemnly invested, and looking backe with regard vpon the worth of *Euphania*, afforded her the dignities of her Widdowhead, and permitted her the fruition of many Pallaces and Priuiledges: besides, in all Assemblies there was a Throane erected somewhat higher then his owne, that the people might know, shee was the Kings Mother, and how high-

ly

Trebizond.

ly hee esteemed her. Now though Fortune had taken off the maske of Despight, and shewed him a countenance of fauour; yet neither seemed hee vaine or elated, but reposed, and indeed moderating that excesse of ioy, which sometimes many Princes after their aduancements, cannot hide. But it may be the meditation of his great affaires reduced him, because three especiall matters listed vp their heads to be seene; and by being seene, to be remembred.

The first, was the discharge of the *Zagarians*, and dismissing *Philano*, which hee royally performed with a Princely ouerplus, confirming the League, and wishing, if the *Persians* and *Medians* did not agree, to hearken after *Koxana*: but when *Trezoboro* came to take his leaue of his Friend, it exceeded a Passion, and the louely *Philano* truly deciphered the force of Affection: So deuiding a Ring betweene them, because subiect to aduentsures, they might be sure not to be vnkowne, they parted in body, but the loue of their hearts ended not in death. The Ring was artificially wrought, and enclosed with an enameled Scalloppe made of a Stone taken from the eyes of a *Panther*; but deuided, was not to be matched without the other: both parts had impression with their owne bloods from this counterchangeable Mott; *Non alind admittit.*

The second proceeded from his care to *Artabanus*, to whom hee had engaged him selfe, especi-

ally

Trebizond.

ally about the redaction of both the Kingdomes to one *Monarchy*: But this was happily without further trouble determined; for not three dayes before *Philano* departed, the Embassadors of *Media* and *Persia* ariued, and after the ceremonie of gratification from all estates was ended, they shewed him a Commission contayning foure principall poynts. First they tyed themselves to yeerely Tribute, as acknowledging him the life, by which their politiuall bodies did moue in peace: The second exposed a perpetuety of Alleageance: for Loue and Dutie was but a slender counterpoise to Life and Honour, which hee had so often aduenured for their sakes: The third concerned the Mariage of *Roxana* with *Darius Artabanus* Sonne: The last entreated for *Cleonidas*, whom destruction had miracuiously spared, & his owne penitency much bettered: To these he breisfly made answer, the Tribute he did disclaime, as foreseeing such a Challenge might either grow to intrusion, or moue their deniall, so heere after debate be the destruction of one another. Their loue and frendshippe he much relyed vpon: The Mariage of *Roxana* he annulled, dilating besides the hapinesse depending: but concerning *Cleonidas Anzitemus*, interceded, as resolved the differences betweene them, were not so slightly to be ouerpassed,

The third and especiall matter of importance consisted of many dissased partes, and therefore
inter-

Trebizond.

intermixed the more trouble to vniforme it: and this was, how to reconcile *Trezoboro* to his father, considering the inconueniencies proiected from the prophesie: First the Emperors goodwill hung in suspence, for he that feared before they were borne, could not but tremble now they were men; and of abillitie to defend themselves: Then the returne of *Kalucky* was doubtfull vpon the notice of the deceite: Thirdly the discussing of the Oracle finding part true in the Maryage of *Brizaca* must needs hasten displeasure: Next the mislike of *Opacus*, because his daughters had so presumed, would sturre vp some troubles: Last of all the ielosie of himselfe, as the Principall cause of mischeife: For commonly men feare most the blow, that cometh last, and the Oracle concluded, that *Mengrelus* must be slaine by his daughters Husband.

These particulars were orderly debated: at last his loue to his Queene and *Trezoboro* preuayled, cyther to make a peaceable attonement, or compulsiue entrance into *Trebizond*: for which purpose *Bertosus* was sent Embassadour from the *Armenian* King to the Emperour *Mengrelus*, to whom the report of *Anzitemus* recovery seemed so strange, that his feare of hee knew not what, presaged mischiefe to follow: yet remembering the Prerogatiue of Kings; and that *Bertosus* desired

Trebizond.

desired audience, hee appoynted a day of hearing; and for the better countenancing his Ma-
iestie, summoned all the Princes and Nobilitie of
his Empire; the chiefe was the Empresse *Ballutasa*:
then followed *Opacus* of *Capadocia*; *Curatfax* of
Iberia; *Phorcianus* of *pontus*; *Schidrothemis* of *Syno-
pis*; *Rhemus* of *Paphlagonia* and *Mithridates* of *Tau-
rica* all Kings, confederats. and Tributaries: a-
mongst his naturall subiects *Carembello* Duke of
Raganda supposed the fauorit of the widdow Em-
prese, *Putrasso*, *Hardubax*, *Marquidan*, *Theoricus*
and *Deiphoebus*, were principall: diuers others
of great worth and Nobility added to the state
by their presence: as for his Sister *Pisana* she
was long since inuested with the Royalties of *Rus-
sia*; whereby a Crosse-mariage encreased many.
Friendes resembling a Sheafe of Arrowes, which
bound together are not to be broken; but dis-
ioyned, are subiect to a slender furie.

When *Bertosus* perceiued the Emperour de-
termined to set forth the ampliation of his glory;
and that this stately shew was of purpose to make
apparant his greatnesse; hee not much misliked
the same, though it tended to cause him to vse
the more reuerence, wherupon after the ceremony
ended, and that their expectation had wrought a
still silence, he layed open the recordes of admi-
ration, and red thus distinctlie before them all:

Subiects (mighty Emperour) entring into great and
impor-

Trebizond.

important actions are to consider, whether they
be commodious to the Common-wealth, Hono-
rable to them selues, easie, or at least not difficult to
be effected, and respectiuous for whom, or against
whom they deale: but *Princes*, or *Princes* Embassa-
dours by all constitutions, are licensed to deliuer
their Message freely, and to be answered or dis-
patched honourably. This I am moued to in-
ferre, because of the strangenesse, wherewith you
must be acquainted; yet such may be my fortune,
that I shall rather seeme a trusty *Mercury* from
Heauen, then a tedious Herrold on Earth: But
how soeuer, this is the will of the Gods, and the
pleasure of the *Armenian* Kinge.

Although the first inconuenience in the Oath
to *Kalucki* hath produced strange alterations, and
in a manner sequestred you from the happinesse
incident to other *Princes*, but quite debarred these
from the comfort of a naturall Successor: yet if
you can be thankfull to supernaturall Power, and
louing to your selfe in the receipt, I offer you a
rich and inestimable Present. To be more
plaine, I bring you glad tydings of a Sonne; and to
these of a true *Prince*, yea such a *Prince*, that you
may presume on Deuine bountie, and Worldly
felicitie, considering his preservation, and perfecti-
on. With that hee vnsolded the wrapped vp secret
of *TreXoboros* and *Brizacas* infancie, his owne
troubles in their bringing vp, the theft of *Cleoni-
das*, their Shipwracke at Sea, the aduenture of *An-
temus*.

Trebizond.

“*Xitemus*, the Mariage of *Brizaca*, and the now settled greatnesse of *Armenia*, where the heroijske *Trezoboro* expecteth the loue of a Father, and is ready to performe the duty of a Sonne.

But ere *Bertosus* had fully concluded, such was the excessiue ioy of the Court, and the ioy exceeding all ioyes of *Arcabella*, that *Mengrelus* was quite disappointed, and in a manner compelled to the same passion, least he should seeme a contrary, amongst so many pleasures: wherupon he rewarded *Bertosus* according to his estate, and confirmed the priuiledge of his place: yet loth to detain him longer, then was conuenient for feare the people might immagin him Ielious of the newes, he tooke order for his dispatch, and appoynted *Mithridates* Prince of *Taurica* to accompany him to *Armenia*, & attend on *Trezoboro* to *Trebizonda*: but neither *Arcabella* nor *Ballutasa* could so slightly dismiss him, the one like a true Mother asking diuers questions touching her Children, wherein she was much satisfied, yet beginning againe and againe asked many things worthy of solution: the other like a gallant *Princes* seemed to glory in the action, and because successe answered her expectation, was very proud to be author of so Famous a deed, nor left she to enquire of the manner of the deliuerie, when *Gellida* and *Perinithum* caryed them into *Capadocia*, for which seruice she had contriued to Crowne the eldest *Queene* of *Phrigia*, and to match the other to *Omphalus* King of *Lidia*: but the

Trebizond.

the desier to see the *Princes* hastneth *Bertosus* returne, who comming to the *Emperres* tooke his leaue with gladnesse &c, was glad to leaue them in such a taking: but parting with the *Emperor*, it seemed rather a farrewell of necessitie, then delight, the manner wherof at his returne he imparted to *Trezoboro* and *Anzitemus*,

In this sort receiued his iorney a limitation, and the faithfull dispatch thereof moued *Anzitemus* to remember, that vertue meriteth a recompence, and Honor flourisheth with the countenance of the Prince, wherfore he determined to aduance both *Bertosus* and *Coranus*: had not *Trezoboro* entreated him not to entercept his good meaning toward them, considering they were subiects of a nother kingdome, and how much they were endeered to him: so that *Placaudus* at this time Triumphed alone, and was inuested with the Royalties of the Dukdom of *Taurasim*, the celebration wherof put *Trezoboro* in minde of his iorney, and *Mithridates* vrged it the rather, because *Brizaca* cheered her selfe with the Societie of her owne Ladies, whom *Arcabella* had very considerately sent vnto her and seemed reposed in the fulnesse of Princely greatnesse and happynesse, had not the very name of a Father & Mother imposed a taske, one desire to see and know them.

Placaudus
made Duke
by *Anzitemus*.

Thus was she left to the fruition of her rated mightnesse, and the Prince setteth forward

Trebizond.

*Trezoboro
returneth to
Trebizonda
and is enter-
tained for
Prince.*

toward *Trebizonda*, but vnderstanding the Court was kept in *Samarchanda*, a rich and populous Cittie, hee studied how to make his entrance, least *Mengrelins* might except against an ambitious beginning, or vaine popularitie: yet the more hee meditated, the more intricate were his owne conceites: For neuer till this apprehending the incombrances, wherewith *Princes* were intangled, hee now perceiued the difference betwixt a great and a meane estate: At last, as it were playing his Fathers Sceane, hee would needes enucleate the Prophecy; but a very bitter taste followed, and it represented a Toyle, from which a man struing to escape, tyed himselfe the faster therein. For no hope remayned, but in discrediting the latter part, considering his miraculous preseruing, and Sisters Mariage had giuen life to the first; yet remembring time must haue his course, and all was to be committed to highest direction, hee onely framed himselfe to giue no cause of mislike, nor by any demeanour to moue his Father to renew his thoughts of the Oracle.

As these particulars had a kind of mutinous passage, hee passed still forward, and came at last with- in sight of the Cittie, which indeed prepared a day of solemnitie for his welcome, and that neither durst the *Emperour* interdict, nor *Trezoboro* gaine- say, least he might seeme the occasion of a prepos- terous beginning, so that he was enforced to moderate that spirit of Maiestie, which his Heroicall dis- position

Trebizond.

position euer maintained, and saluted the compa- nies in order as they came with a still behaviour, & when the applause of the people seemed more then a Triumph, he went forward in quietnesse, vntill the *Emperor* presented himselfe, who hastned by his wife and mother, (but especially least in the re- tradance the people might imagine strange mat- ters) was now to giue and receiue the reciprocall comfort proceeding from so blessed a greeting. Heere *Trezoboro* dismounted, and with obedient demeanor prostrated himselfe to *Mengrelins*, who could not but like a father, make his ioy the more appeare; & like a Prince reioice with his subjects for such a recouery: So he tooke him in his Armes with teares, and conducted him to *Arcabella* & *Ballutasa*, with gladnesse, but they seemed transported to a nother world with his sight and seasure, and as when the Sunne at his going downe is taken into heauen from the sight of the earth, so was the Prince conueyed from the rest betweene them into a new glory, and sence reioycing delight, which conti- nued in firme strength (without so much as any mans whispering the least mistrust of alteration) vntill the cause of their now goodnesse effected the troubles ensuing, by reason *Kalucki* made acquainted with this discouery, layed claime to the *Empire* and came in person to plead his right: but we must take a progresse into another King- dome, before he be ready to come hither.

Trebizond.

The story of
Kalccki and
Mullumalla

HOWsoever *Historiographers* haue written of many strange Customes tending to incivilitie amongst the *Tartarians*, in regard of the many strange Nations within so spacious a Country; yet haue they all concluded, that no people are of better obseruance toward their *Emperour*, nor *Emperour* so imperious over his Subiectes; by reason whereof diuers Warres and Stratagems hath made them beleue, the Crowne was held in the hand of *Victorie*, to be bestowed on the preynayle: But amongst others, the most famous chaunced betwene *Barka* and *Allau*, both Noble, valiant, beloued, and at one time nominated *Emperours*; yet by no meanes consenting to Deuision or Competition: Now because in such Conuulsions, there is no medium betwene an *Emperour* and Traytor, either strived as well to liue, as to reigne; so that the dissention continued with great difficultie and extremitie betwene them, at such time, as *Kallucki* dispossessed in *Trebizond*, came with his complices into this Country; and politickly considering his estate, made offer of seruice in nature of a mercinarie Souldier vnto *Barka*, who superstitiously imputed his coming, as sent from Heauen to his assistance, and therefore without curiosity quartered him by himselfe & sent a Treasurer with other officers to attend him: but it was not long ere he made Tryall of his vertue in some slender Skirmishes, which with admiration

Trebizond.

311

of discipline and valiant execution he performed: Then he sent him to surprise a place entrenched, whether *Allau* had drawne his cheifest strength, and by the same both kept the passages and him selfe from danger, this seemed a matter of difficultie, yet with diuers pioners, and by lodging neere, they were able to make a Mine (a thinge as yet vknowne amongst them) out of which in the dead of the night they issued on the enemy, and committing a notable slaughter, leueled the place with the ground, and so returned in Triumph: Lastly he put him in trust with Managing the maine Battaille (for *Allau* would tryfle no longer, but appointed a day of Tryall) wherein his Fortune and vallure ioyned in Leauge. For in that encounter he slew the strong reputed *Allau*, discomfited his forces, and setled *Barka* in a quiet possession of greatnesse, as himselfe in a strange commendation of goodnesse, because the people apprehending him the meanes, whereby their troubles ceased, and peace flourished, performed intercession to the Gods for his prosperitie, and made proferre of themselves to support him in any enterprise of his owne.

This was soone perceiued by *Mullumalla* cheife *Empres* (for their customes allowed many wiues and more Concubines, & yet was the Law of adulterie seuerely punished amongst them) who long since found her selfe surprised with his loue, and hunted after euery opportunitie to discouer her affection, which (hauing receiued impression from the

The Empres
Mullumalla
in loue which
Kalccki.

Trebizond.

the report of so many, who seemed to dote on his worth, & was after strengthened with her one opinion & iudgment from his presence & vertues) grew to a kind of vehemencie, and that hindered by many reasons, and further incombrances, encreased to impatience, because she thought there was yet meanes to do her selfe good, & he being a stranger would to be glad to be the fauorite of an *Empress*. But as she went forward in this path of incontinency, successe not alwayes respectiuous to vertuous proceedings attended without her owne seeking and preiudice, as arising from the *Emperors* iniustice vpon this occasion.

No sooner had the vertue of *Kalucki* shewed her excellencie, and the people more and more had him in estimation, whereby the new established *Barka* was to determine something for his recompence and aduancement, but a certaine ielowse of his insinuating into the fauor of the kingdome, and misconstruing his royall birth and right to *Trebizond*, which all sortes began already to pittie, and so to fauor, slacked his loue toward him, & weakened the strength of his willingnesse to aduance him, nor least his conceite so: but a further peeuishnesse whispered, that he sought to rob him of his subiects hearts: now when strange humours were entertained, strange distemperatures followed, in so much that he one while resolved quite to dismiss him, as hauing no further occasion to imploy him, but that he thought was too inhumaine, and his

Trebizond.

his Subiectes would neuer condiscend, vlesse it were to reconer his Empire: Another-while hee studied to proportion him some remote corner to inhabit in: but heere hee mistrusted, it would be reputed a disgrace, as proceeding from a wearisomnesse of his Company, and then the opportunitie to thinke it a disgrace, might cause him to reuenge it, as if it were a disgrace indeed. Anon hee imagined to send him further, vnder colour of an honourable atchieuement against *India*; but suspecting the increase of his Renowne in successe, he happed by the way on another doubt, a revolt by the same Armie committed to his charge. Thus did the vncertainie of the best course, inhibit the certaintie of any course, till at last the very feare of Alteration, encreased euery Conceit to prevent *Barka* the feare: and when no meanes of contentment mineth to without his absence appeared, hee depended on murder *Kalucki*, by some course or other to make him away: *lucki*. as for his Followers, the head being cut off, the rest of the members would quickly perish: Yet lay hee awhile in waite to intrappe him in some haynous mulst or other; but sayling: hee concluded by secret callenture, or other diuclish imposture to finish his tragedy.

This was neither hid with so close a veyle, but *Kalucki* perceiued the *Emperours* incongruent behauiour toward him; nor debated with such trust, but *Mullumalla* foresaw the mischief, which shee not much repined against, because shee

Trebizond.

had so good a ground to worke vpon, and so might raise her ambition, satisfy her loue, and suffulciate her glory: yea though the life of the *Emperor* payed for it, and although her owne spirit would questionlesse haue ripened conceits to satisfy her desires (for what cannot; nay what will not, a woman, a Prince, and in loue effect:) yet Fortune added winges to her inuention, and now helped to rowle the stone, which at last Tombled *Barka* out of the world: For as the *Emperor* vnder Coulor offauour would needes carry *Kalucki* to the Pallace of Concubines, but of purpose to make their beuties a baite to allure him, and so by enfringing the seueredict in that kinde, to haue cause of aculation against him: the *Empres* tooke occasion of passage by the walke, through which *Kalucki* must returne to the Court, and perceiuing he had been left alone amongst them to make tryall of his abillitie in resisting the temptation, she somewhat cunningly asked those about her, who it was, that presumed so to come within the Limits of these places sacred, and prohibyted: and from whence he had now brought him selfe: Answer was made, it was the Prince *Kalucki* whom the *Emperor* licensed to view the other Pallace: that will I know, sayth she from him selfe, call him therefore heither: least his ignorance by being a stranger breed further error: But when *Kalucki* perceiued, it was the *Empres*, his inward motions were at variance, and the very bloud of his

vaines

Trebizond.

vaines seemed troubled, like as Wine riseth into bubbles, when a lump of Sugar is throne into the Glasse, or is sturred with a greater strength: yet come he must, and fall downe he must, and rise againe he must, & answer many questions he must, as how the *Emperor* pleased to grace him; how he liked the Ladyes, and their attyre, whether he knew the fault of his being there, and many other to the same purpose: all which he answered like himselfe a man, a Prince, and vnmoued with nouelties. At last seeing the prerogative and custome had taught her attendants to stand so remote, that they were out of hearing, she left thinges impertinent to giue him notice, there was some good toward him, and preparing his attention vsed these speeches.

Before I enter (thou honorable *Stranger*) into the channell of my Discourse, let mee giue thee notice of the Countries wherein wee liue, and the Customes wee obserue. The first mighty, large, rude, vncitied, and in many places deformed: yet somewhat capable of Discipline, and assured Friends to Vallour: The latter, not greatly Religious, nor caryed away with the nicetie of Vertue, seldome maintayning Iustice: for the stronger Arme suppresseth a weake; and hating, or at least neglecting any *Stranger* whatsoever, onely your selfe may boast of great happinesse in the loue of the people, and opinion of the better sort, (though I must confesse farre short of your desert) and

Sf2.

presume

Trebizond.

„ presume on exceeding specialtie neuer afforded
 „ any other, but withall, as you see a Fire of filthy
 „ weedes to giue a glorious light, but to leaue a
 „ long time after a most odious stinke: So hath this
 „ applause caried a pleasant shew toward you; But
 „ no lesse then your life must answer the displea-
 „ sure arising from the same: For the *Emperour* in-
 „ toxicated with a violent suspicion against you,
 „ trembleth at the feare, and hath concluded alrea-
 „ die your death; What resteth now, but preuenti-
 „ on? That cannot be wrought but by my meanes:
 „ nor can I proceed, but by your consent, and re-
 „ spect of such a Friend, as must and will saue your
 „ life. Be not therefore curious of my mistake to
 „ *Barka*, breach of Vowes, affliction to your selfe,
 „ and such petty questions. But suppose after ap-
 „ prooued goodnesse, I shame to see thee subiect to
 „ apparant inhumanitie; now resteth in thy choyce
 „ either life or death: To this, a hundred severall
 „ passages are open: To that, onely one Doie is vnoc-
 „ ked, and looketh both to life and Maiestie. To
 „ be plaine; either the *Emperour* must yeeld to the
 „ summons of a hasty Death, or thy selfe to the ar-
 „ rest of a violent Execution. If then with vnder-
 „ standing this abruptnesse, thou canst remember
 „ thy selfe; and by thy selfe, the danger to be ac-
 „ quainted with the affaires of *Princes*; and by that
 „ danger, to contriue the contrary safte; and by that
 „ safte, to reioyce with her, that determineth all
 „ honour vnto thee, I am satisfied: and hope in

*Mullumal-
 la contrineth
 to saue Ka-
 niki.*

con-

Trebizond.

„ conceiuing mee a right, neither is your Courage,
 „ nor Wisedome so rebated, but you can put a
 „ difference betwixt a happy life, and miserable
 „ death.

This sodaine breuitie, but full of substance,
 and so well graced with a maiestical Spirit, brought
 with it her accustomed companion Amazement:
 yet because there was nothing heere inferred (ex-
 cept the loue of the *Empresse*) which hee before
 suspected not, his Answer seemed the redier; and
 with addition of extraordinarie demcanour,
 strengthened her liking the rather toward him.
 For when he saw that counterpleading would ra-
 ther shew a Demissnes, then Conscience; and that
 all good courses were vnprofitable with vntracta-
 ble people, hee graciously submitted to her be-
 hests, not without protestation, that her Beautie
 and magnificense, had attracted his regard more,
 then desire of any Greatnesse: So that hee rested,,
 like Wax moulded with her warme hand, ready,,
 for what impression it pleased her to bestow:,,
 onely hee impetrated, that if it were possible, hee
 might be exempted in the bloody attempt; because
 hee would not pollute his hands with a *Princes*
 massacre. This shee tooke as an excellent part of
 Generositie: So that as much inflamed with his
 Vertues, as Person, shee dismissed him to his owne
 care, and settled her selfe to the strange course of the
Emperours death; which ledde her vp by easie
 staires, then she could imagine.

Ss 3

For

Trebizond.

For the *Emperor* fully resolved to his murder compacted with *Chamus*, *Ilion*, *Iodds* and *Tarachim* to be the executioners: but *Tarachim* either a secret instrument of the *Empres*, or taking remorse to see iniustice rebell against vertue, or pollytickly forecasting for his owne priuate, as perceiuing to what end her desires tended: once againe discovered the substance and circumstance of the cause to *Mullumalla*, and that he wanted nothing but a time to put it in practise: And hath he nobody (sayth she to make the slaue of wickednesse, but a man endeered to vs for his Nobilitye of blood, and euer till now the seruant of Honour and vertue; Beleue me I thinke you are bewitched so strangely to be drawne into your owne ruines, for what trust can he repose in you, that can be hired with Mony to doe mischeise: without question it is but a plot of tryall against your selues, who will euer make account of the Murderers of a Prince; yea such a Prince, to whom the kingdome must yeald the Tribute of your peace: but if there were possibillitie to beleue, that any many durst imagin such a thought, by the silence of the night I sweare, weare he not my *Emperor*, I iudge him worthy of death in his base submission to such villany, therefore Honorable *Tarachim* deceiue not thy selfe in *Barkas* meaning, nor be againe deceiued, though he meane as thou sayest, For then can it proue no other wise then absolute tyranny, and to free the Common wealth of a Tyrant is indeed

an

Trebizond.

an action of renowne: This she spake to put his disposition to the touch, and finding him willing to be diuerred, she then strengthened him in that resolution: this made him more flexible toward her, and that perswaded a wondrefull contrarietie, bringing in the Ielousie of his owne life, so the feare to preuent it submitted to her directiōn, againe she with a doubtfull manner of speech, that if he had sayd the truth it were better. a wicked *Emperor* miscaried, then men of vertue and good deseruing: and last of all with reasons, promises, and protestations to make the fact iustificable, tooke his oth to kill the *Emperor*: Which he very opportunely performed in a walke adioyning to the Pallace, as conferring together in secret about *Kalucki*, and no sooner shruncke the bleeding Carcase to the ground, but he wounded himselfe in many places with the *Emperors* *Samiter*, quight conueying away the instrument of death and so stood crying for helpe in a pittifull manner.

By this time hath the strange reporie of the *Emperors* murder possessed both Court, and Country with amase, and the murtherer without any pursuite quickly submitted him selfe: but brought before the *Empres* and the rest to whom such a cause pertained, he confessed the fact: yet desired that he might take away the shame, though not the fault in the misfortune, by discovering the secreete as it chanced now because his bleeding woundes induced commiseration, and that his present state made

shew

The murder of Barka.

Trebizond.

" shew of violence against him, it was thought con-
 " venient to heare him, and if it were, but to bolt out
 " the rest of the conspirators. Most deuine *Empresse*.
 " (quoth he) & Honorable vpholders of this mightie
 " state, I intend neither to entreat for fauour nor life,
 " (for in the very misfortune of the mischeife, I am
 " worthy to dye) yet giue me leaue to extenuate
 " your displeasures against me, and to disclaime ei-
 " ther a naturall disposition to such impietie, or now
 " willingnesse to lay violent handes on such a per-
 " son: wherein that my true simplicitie may some-
 " what countenance me, and that I plead for my
 " Honour and renowne, giue me leaue to Launce
 " my Barcke into this Channell. Who doth not re-
 " member the misery of our Country, through the
 " ambition of our Emperours *Barka*, and *Allan*,
 " deceased? Who doth not acknowledge the blef-
 " sings conferred vnto vs by the Prince *Kalucki*,
 " who with all vertuous industries hath proceeded
 " for our good? yet (mighty *Peeres*) I shame to
 " tell it, without respect of worth, royaltie, honour,
 " or the benefite it selfe, some wretched Ielousie so
 " mist our *Emperour*, that very ingratefully (if
 " I make not too great offence in the tearme) hee
 " contrived many wayes his destruction, miscon-
 " struing our Loues, and his Vallour, to tend to an
 " aspiring reach: and when nothing appeared to ap-
 " pease his misdoubts, hee flatly concluded to mur-
 " der him secretly: To which bestiality, hee sug-
 " gested *Chamus*, *Iliod*, *Iodda*, and my selfe, over-
 " reaching

Trebizond.

reaching our Obedience with Imperious will, and
 insorcering our frayley with Reward and Prefer-
 ment. Now what euer good or bad Angell was
 ouer this dismall night predominant, I know not,
 but sending for mee into the Walke, hee conferred
 about the Murder; and because my slacknesse se-
 med rather enclined to remorse, then dispatch of
 the tyrannous decree, all impatient hee flew vpon
 mee, wounding mee in this manner, neuer repres-
 sing his furie, till I lost the vse of respect and con-
 sideration: then life straued with necessitie, and
 compelled her seruant strength to the cloze, hoping
 onely to saue it selfe; wherein, howsoeuer it chan-
 ced, the Swod in the fall, strooke him to the heart:
 which how grievous it is vnto mee, the immortal
 powers, that haue deliuered *Kalucki*, and preser-
 ued all your glories, can witnesse.

This vnlookt-for contrarietie, made them all
 amazed, yet when the examination of the rest, and
 other circumstances agreed with the truth, most
 strange was the confusion amongst them: For the
 people with great acclamations cryed out, Live
Kalucki, live *Tarachim*. The *Empresse* tooke hea-
 uily her Husbands misfortune; but seemed more
 troubled with his infamy. The *Princes* of the
 State knew not what to say, or how to proceede:
 The people they continued with zeale towarde
Kalucki, and in a manner protested *Mullumella*
 could not doe better, then make him satisfaction
 by mariage. Heere Wisdome played a kind part

Trebizond.

For though her Desire burned within her to the same purpose, yet a still modesty kept her from making shew of any such motion: and when the greatest Lords (as not knowing how to suppress it, being a matter of that consequence; & the party a man of that high deserving) urged it againe. Shee sayd it was a time of sorrow, and the loue toward them, would not consent to anything vnbe-fitting: But when indeed another and another time was spent in yeelding reasons of the likeli-hood of happinesse; and that her cunning had drawen them to beleue their importunities should preuaile with her, shee welcommed the fortune, that had thus smiled vpon her, and tooke *Kalucki* into the tuition of her loue; which quickly inuested him *Emperour*, and sware the Subjects to loyalty and obediene.

*Kalucki
Emperour
of Tartary.*

Now was hee to play the part of an Emperour, and by reason of the naturall rudenesse of the Country, and inciuility of the people; the one to be refined, the other reduced, the greater was his need of those excellent ornaments of Kings: but being him selfe a naturallist of Maiesty, hee soone put in practise Magnanimitie for his State and Court; Wisdome for the common causes, and (extracted from her) Policy to keepe the great men in obedience, Affability (as farre as their Customs permitted) to obtaine fauour, where it hung in suspence; and Iustice to strengthen the loue got by meere good hap. Besides, hee knew
how

Trebizond.

how *Mullumalla* had proceeded; and therefore was shee to be regarded with extraordinary be-hauiour: But heere was no place for Mistrust or Ielouse, because shee prooued an admirable Wife and Mother of many Children; and the people continued in their loue, as hauing no cause to mislike.

BUt as he went forward in this towardly Tor-
pise to felicitie, fame that euer scorned to be
pend in a Corner came to tell him, the Em-
perour *Mengrelions* had infringed the coue-
nants ratified, and a Prince liued in scorne of his
composition, which somewhat distempred him,
as foreseeing the troubles impending, or shame to
let his Honour be abused: but when *Scaroxus* the
brother of *Queridock*, whom *Mengrelions* had dis-
possessed of the Royalties of *Sinopsis* by placing
Seydrohemis King, had in person urged other
particulars: then was *Mullumalla* made acquaint-
ed with the story from the beginning, and she
(though desier could haue pleaded, that no satis-
faction was answerable to his company) yet sto-
mached the indignity, and in her Heroick spirit
concluded; his renoune hung in suspence without
revenge: Now rested the doubt, what course
to take: And therein many times and much de-
bating shewd as well the durie of a wife, as Honour
of a Prince: at last shee willed him by summoning
the

*Kalucki en-
formed, how
his brother
had broken
promise and
covenant
with him, de-
termineth to
be reuenged.*

*Kalucki cer-
tesified his
brother had
a sonne.*

The Estates of the *Empire* to make tryall of their affection; (which hee performed, because it pleased; and it pleased, because hee wished: and hee wished, because he was so great a person and greatly beloued) to whom after the Ceremonies of the assembly were ended, he deliuered these speeches.

Although (louing and worthy to be beloued
 „ Lords and Subjects) the deuine prouidence and
 „ your fauours hath collated this *Empire* without
 „ desert or my owne first seeking: yet must I not
 „ now either degenerate from that I am; or appeare
 „ other, then I should be, least you may imagin
 „ former basenesse, or present demisnesse: but be-
 „ cause matters of Armes and martiall exploits are
 „ intended (and as may be objected rather for my
 „ priuate satisfaction, then your generall good) I
 „ determined to acquaint you with the story from
 „ the beginning, and so fell into the addition of many
 „ circumstances, with this last newes of *Scoronus*,
 „ which they neuer heard of: Now, if you thinke
 „ it meete, that so great a commander ouer so many
 „ valiant people, and such spacious Countries should
 „ digest a defamation, which pettie *Princes* would
 „ aduenture to reuenge, I must submit, and for your
 „ sakes, or peace will make the Waite of a distem-
 „ pered conscience: But if my calamitous discourse
 „ hath wrought any impression, whereby with your
 „ leues and assistance I may proceed, then doe I ex-
 „ postulate your constancie, and account my selfe
 „ more happy, then Fortunate: For if you haue
 „ rightly

rightly vnderstood me, my meaning is not to lead
 „ you to destruction, or drine you like a Tyrant to
 „ a slaughter house: but I expose vnto you the re-
 „ couery, Cities, Possessions, Ritches, and what
 „ men can desire, of a large and fertile Countrie
 „ to which without doubt the Gods will consent,
 „ so your abashed drawing backe be not signes of
 „ ill successe.

When it seemed he determined silence, the
 company rather wondring at his perfections, then
 misunderstanding his speeches, gaue a great Plau-
 dite, crying, the Gods preserue *Kalucke*; the Gods
 protect our Emperor; and with vnfainednesse
 offered themselves and goods freely to the enter-
 prise: this made him feast them all sumptuously
 by way of gratification, and that brought them to
 care and reuerence toward him the easier: so a
 Councell of Warre disputed the matter, and dis-
 persed the severall Commanders to rayse vp For-
 ces to make his Armie the greater: For though
 hee had euer in readinesse a hundred thousand in
 Armes, besides his owne Companies brought with
 him from *Trebizond*, and now foure-score Thou-
 sand seruing for a Guard to his person; yet were
 his Foure principall Kingdomes; that is to say,
Ieckomongall, *Sumongall*, *Merchat*, and *Metrit*,
 assailed at Fourtie thousand a peece, mustred and
 orderly trayned (in respect of their former disorder)
 at *Coralla*, where the *Repdexuons* was appoynted.

*Malucki re-
turneth to
challenge the
Empire of
Trebizonda:*

THUS with a mightie Armie he marched along, leaving *Mallumalla Regent* in his absence, who the morning of his departure had sacrificed two whight Hartes to *Diana*, and by their forward going to the Alter, preiaged good successe, and his returne: and hauing framed an Imperiall Diadem set on many degrees, and beautified with inestimable Pretious stones, which were supported in euery barre with her owne prorrature (a thing questionlesse both for worth and workmanship of admiration) she Crowned him therewith in the sight of the Armie, and so with a Warlike ceremony committed him to the tuition of the Sunne: Thus is he come to the confines of *Albania*, and there rested himselfe, studying which way to proceed in the best course, and at last creating *Queridock* Prince of his Emperiall tent, made him an Embassador to *Mengrelins* with these instructions: That whereas he had been dispossessed of the Empire of *Trebizonda* by wrong and despite, and was contented to embrace him selfe to strange conditions to auoyde effusion of blood: they had yet, to adde to his indignitie scorned him, and infringed the Lawes both of Honor and nations: that seeing this contempt was intollerable, &c. the Couenants enioyned him to lay claime to his right, he came in person with an Armie of three hundred Thousand well appoynted Soldiers to performe the same, that if it seemed good

to

to the Emperials to admitte him to quiet possession, considering it was but a finale satisfaction of his first wronges, no worthy man should be displaced, and he would desist from the way of conquest: That if they impugned his desires, then to denounce open hostility, and giue them warning, the businesse was remedlesse, and he mercilesse.

This Embasie did *Queridock* deliuer with a gallant spirit and grace, not without intimation of iniustice concerning him selfe, and diuers others banished their naturall Country: which in a manner distracted the hearers, by reason they could not denie what he sayd, nor durst accord to what hee importuned, and had not their present peace, but espetially the vndoubted towardnesse of the Heroiick *Trezobero* suggested infinite miseries, and wretchednesse in the best change, without doubt there would haue followed a most terrible confusion.

But now is *Mengrelins* perplexed many wayes with the arrogant Message, the opinion of his Subjects, the remembrance of his first wrong, the trouble of the Warres, the errours of his Mother and Wife, the alteration of the State, the displeasure against *Opacus* for his Daughters sauing his Children, the duty of a Father now they were preferred, and the feare of the Prophecy, which indeed dogged him at the heeles, and followed him like a shadow: So that no way of safety appeared, but

in

Trebizond.

In his Sonnes destruction; which as hee supposed, would both satisfie *Kaluckies* claime, and settle his owne ielosie, yet loth to discouer his feares in publike, or enterpose such a mischeife in the times of rumors and occations of Warre: he went more cunningly to worke, and vnder Colour of the common good thus spake to the estates of the Empire, which he had assembled at *Samarbanda*.

So great is the mischeife threatned against vs (most happy people, but in my unhappines) that I scarce know, how to preuent it: because on the one side my fatherly affection and your loues, must and will disclaime any strange courses against my sonne, on the other side, my dignitie importuneth a Princely connexion of soueraingtie, and nature it selfe Countermandeth the Tiramous composition, which I am sure began in Iniustice, and you may obiekt will end in destruction: but because my Country & people are in a degree before my Children: yea my owne life and least the commonwealth should complaine for vexing her with these intollerable wronges: if there may be reason in this vnreasonablenesse: I abiure the name of a Father, and offer my sonne as a Sacrifice of attonement: I renounce the Royaltie, which now seemeth like a glorious Sunne; and submitte for your satisfaction: I cast downe my life to be put into the other Ballance against your affliction: For neither *Mengrelus*, nor *Trezobro* shall be themselves to make you worse, then your selues;

Trebizond.

selues, yet be not too sodden in censuring me care, lesse of him, whom you see the heauens haue cared for: nor too submisse concerning my owne Honor, which I haue so charylie preserved; For if you will vouchsafe to ioyne with me, all helpes of pollecy and courage shall be vnited, that the body and communitie of this Empire remaine vndissolued, and before I submit to any diuision of Titles, which now your respects haue conferred, the world shall tremble at the report of these stratagemmes, and death giue a plaudite to my last Tragical act, but once againe like a lonjng mother, which is still taking her leaue of her departing sonne, and haueing one spetiall matter to counsell him in, doth often and very often remember it: so like the Father of the Common-wealth, doe I put you in minde, while it is time, to thinke vpon the horrible end of this tryall: For to affright vs the more, we are to contend with Beastes, and men worse then Beastes, *Anthropophagi*, *Misecoli*, Monsters in nature, and all Barbarisme, so that nothing but bloud and death, or vtter ruin of vs all (which the Gods interdict) must follow in the preuailing: Preuent therefore, Preuent in time your troubles heere; is *Mengrelus* began the inconuenience, heere is *Trezobro* the cause of your feare, heere is both father and sonne the Ransome of your disquiet.

But as a further vehemencie might haue ynshadowed the heate of other humors, the people vn-

Trebizond.

willing to see their Prince so distempred, and unable to dissolue their firme rooted zeale, cryed aloud, the Gods confound the disturbers of our peace, the Gods dispose of all thinges to their pleasure: live therefore *Mengrelus* sacred, and irremoucable: spare not to defend your kingdomes, for we will neither hassard our Princely *Trezoboro*, nor permit any dissipation of our gouernment.

Mengrelus is resouled to put it to the Tryall of a battaile but is prevented by miracle.

Thus is *Kaluckies* Embassage contradicted, and *Queridock* dismissed backe, which caused defiance to rumour terrible thinges, and the best dispositions were shuffed betwixt feare & hope: At last *Kalucki* vnwilling to trifell, least prouision for so great an Armie might be wanting, sent forward the greatest part of his Forces deuided into three Battailes vnder the conduct of *Sicambus*, *Mallan*, *Petrofrol*, *Zami*, and *Xantippus*, all in times past of hereditary possessions in *Pontus*, *Iberia*, and *Colchidos*: and followed himselfe with the rest quartered in fiue partes, vnder the commaund of *Misogambus*, and *Olippo*, two of the *Empresse Mulumallas* bretheren, and *Barsangol* and *Iubar*, sonnes of *Mithra* and *Delium*, two Queenes of late the Concubines of *Barka*: In the midst was *Kalucki* himselfe sequestred in an *Emperiall* Tent, & according to the ceremonious respect of his estate, neither to bee scene nor spoken withall, but at speciall

Trebizond.

tiall times: The ordning of this businesse was not committed to such a secretary, but the Emperour of *Trebizond* knew the manner of his proceedings: and by that time he had passed *Cularopa* furnished himselfe reasonable well: For from *Taurica*, the heither *Scithia*: *Russia*, and *Hiperborei*, he had one hundred Thousand *Auxiliaries*: out of *Colchidos*, *Pontus*, *Iberia*, and *Paphlagonia* he mustered eightie Thousand: and from the Citties of *Samarchanda*, *Trebizond*, *Merlanes*, and *Xantippi* he receiued twentie Thousand well appointed, and of better specialitie, by reason they were the sonnes of Noble men, and Cittizens glorying in their ancient freedoms: these he kept next his person, and appoynted *Curatsax*, *Pharcanos*, *Scydrothemis*, & *Mithridates* ouerseers of his Guard, as for *Trezoboro* he suffered his forwardnesse to direct the whole businesse as if his hope receiued life, that some action or other might worke his miscarying.

Thus is the Trumpet of defiance ready to sound on both sides, yet meane not the *Trebizondians* in such suddenesse to put it to the Tryall of a field, because by being possessed of the streites and passages: the enimie was sure to lessen his numbers, and they winn time the Father of many contrarieties: but the Circumstances of this great Warre are referred to my booke of Battailes, I therefore ouerpasse them now, and only certifie you, that when *Mengrelus* perceiued he was not able

to detaine them longer from a day of terror, he tooke a Truce for seauen dayes, laying open the Trenches, and making the way plaine, as if he determined to entertaine slaughter with handsomnesse, or let death haue a larger freedome by easie passage: So that the stoutest Courage was appauled at the preperation, and had no other hope but dismay and confusion: yet feares are enemies to the Progres of victory, and therefore all abatements of Courage were absented, when it came to the tryall indeed, and *Kalucki* contrary to the coustomes of his greatnesse, thought good to ouerlooke the partes of his Warrelike body, that if neede required, the helping a disease or fault in time, might preuent a greater mischeife: nor desisted hee so, but Mounted on a throne of purpose to bee seene and herd, he thus tooke his farrewell.

I intend not to vse many wordes vnto you, as suspitious of your loues and vallures: For if there were such a slackenesse, it is now too late to murmur or Trifell; but because my regard toward you may bee the better expressed, I am the bolder to speake, yet doe but determine to put you in minde of your owne mindes, and knowledge: Remember then, what humour soeuer the enemy entertaine, we are succorlesse, and farre from home, therefore must vallure make your way into new possessions, or if you suppose the ostentation of the enemy, is a glorious spectacle, you haue

haue Armes and Hands to vnplume them, and bedeck your selues with their spoyle: but what is this to your owne liues and glories, which in a manner enforce you to shake off all incommbrances of feare as for my selfe? (though I am loth to degenerate from the ancient prerogatiues of your Emperors) yet will I be the first to giue the onser: For the cause being mine, mine shall be the Honour or the shame; and yours the spoyle, wherein besides the renowne of the exploit, the poorest vassalle shall thinke himselfe well rewarded. The Country you see is pleasing, and the blessings you haue already tasted of; goe one therefore goe on: Fortune bids you goe on; and Victory lookes already with a pleasing Countenance. Heere a wonderfull clamour seemed to threaten heauen with the noise, by which the *Trebyzondians* had warning of their enemies ill meaning toward them: For till this they had bene awientive vnto *Mengrelus*, who very well knew, that a seasonable encouragement with addition of the worth of the partie speaking, was a very whet-stone of Courage, and had wrought great effect indeed with whole Armies almost ready to faint.

Little need I (sayed he) debate any particulars concerning the former occasions of your now imminent troubles: For your owne Loyalties and resolutions haue put a way all feare, and continued the steadfastnesse, which I now finde, yea hurried

Trebizond.

„ you to the Gates of danger to make demonstration
 „ of your constancie: I am therefore sure you will
 „ not now relent, what euer mischeife is threatned,
 „ nor would I haue you discouraged, in that neither
 „ spoyles of Citties, nor riches of a plentiful Land
 „ shall be the recompence of your charge and endea-
 „ uors, but rather animated in regard you are to
 „ support a flourishing Common-wealth, and a Coun-
 „ try (thanks to the eternall Powers, beautified with
 „ a blessed plentie: If this seeme a slender enforce-
 „ ment, then looke on your Byrths and the places
 „ challenging naturall regard, your Mothers, that
 „ bare you, your Wiues endered vnto you, your
 „ Children, that exclaime: your friends and Allies
 „ depending vpon you, and your selues, knowing
 „ the necessitie of life: as for the Enemy, I assure
 „ you, they haue not that aduantage by the number
 „ of men, as your selues by discipline, vallure, and
 „ good order: But why should I so much as wisper
 „ misdoubts amongst you, when neuer appeared
 „ more loue and dutie; and what will not loue and
 „ dutie effect? And the immortall Powers are ap-
 „ peared, giuing notice of in-ferutable secrets, as you
 „ can all witnesse the *Haruspices* haue promulged,
 „ let not vs then consent to surqueory or demis-
 „ nesse.

„ As he was going on, the signe was giuen to the
 „ Battaile: But behold, a strange interception deuied
 „ the Armies by the descending of a thicke and spa-
 „ tious Cloude, which stood as a Vale betweene
 „ them,

Trebizond.

them: at last a fence dismayng thunder made a hor- The battaile
 rible rupture, and a strange voyce with a passable preuented by
 lightning cried out *Trezoboro bariona: Trezoboro* Miracle.
bariona; Whereupon the *Magy*, *Gymnoso-*
phists, and *Haruspices* were called on both sides, who
 interpreted it to this fence; that there was no stri-
 uing against deuine reuolutions. For the Gods had
 proclaimed *Trezoboro* the sonne of peace; and
 when *Mengrelius* vrged it was by the way of sa-
 crifice, they repugned, as finding no blood must
 be shed: by this, the former terror vanished, and the
 Armies seemed *Metamorphised* into sober expecta-
 tion, which caused the Magnificent Prince to
 mount himsele like the sonne of Honour, and
 stepping before the maine Fronts with a seemely
 Trotte he paced to the *Tartarians*, desiring to
 present himsele before the Emperour *Kalucki* and
 king of Kings, who enformed of the gallant de-
 meanor, and presence of his *Nephew*, called the
 principall commaunders of his Armie, and set-
 tled in his *Imperiall* Tent with exceeding Maie-
 stie and Pompe, admitted him audience: but when
Trezoboro tooke notice of the state, and the Em-
 perours person, he quickly alighted and with a re-
 spectious ceremony of obeisance, entreated his fa-
 uor to giue him leaue to speake: which belike was
 obtained with order; For he thus began.

I haue not presumed (most reuerent, sacred, and
 vnuanquishable *Emperour*) in any impudent man-
 ner to neglect my dutie by this Course, or desperat
 contempt

Trebizond.

„ contempt to weigh with lightnesse your high
 „ Maiestie, or great Armie, but by deuine inspiration
 „ whereof there is none, that hath not in some sort
 „ participated: I present vnto you the strange truth
 „ of my birth, life, and bringing vp, whereby shall
 „ appeare a very destinie to this titular happinesse,
 „ or (as it may proue) incombrance; and that the
 „ wronges, which haue thus sturred you to reuenge,
 „ were neither determined in mallice, nor meane
 „ now to be continued in contempt, because the
 „ Triumphs of murder and destruction will then be
 „ lamentable: which to preuent, the Gods in their
 „ accustomed mercy haue giuen a Prodigious war-
 „ ning: Let vs not therefore with the Giants fight
 „ against heauen, nor reiect the blessed fauor, which
 „ now shineth vpon vs, as if it were to declare the
 „ will of all working power, disclaimeth effusion
 „ of blood: and for my selte, which am the reputed
 „ cause, you see I come as a simple Hollocault to re-
 „ decme the liues of infinite Thoufandes: yet giue
 „ mee leaue (how euer it pleased you to submitte
 „ at that time to vniuersall banishment) to exprobrate
 „ the vnnaturall couenants ratified, which as it
 „ should seeme the whole senate of heauen contra-
 „ dicted. With that, he discovered at large the *Ora-
 „ cle at Delphos*, the manner of his Byrth, the pietie
 „ of *Opacus* daughters, the theft of *Cleonidas*, the
 „ Shipwrack of *Beriosus*, and the mariage of *Briza-
 „ ca*. Now said he, if you thinke it conuenient to
 „ impeach this secret, heere I prostrate my selfe to
 the

Trebizond.

the sauagest crueltie, but if an honorable attonement might pacifie your iust conceined displeasure, and reward this Armie, wee offer a yeerely Tribute to thy byrth-right, a satisfaction for all charges, and a Million of Treasure as a donatiue to the Soldiers: besides, the world shall tremble at the vnitie of your houses, and ages to come, reuerence the Fame of two such bretheren; For you being the seruant of the great God, and ruler ouer all rulers, *Mengrelus* will be your seruant, and submitte as farre, as such a *Monarch* may doe to his elder Brother, and highest Lord.

These speeches iudicially deliuered (his outward countenance tempered betweene an amiable and, modest behauiour) breathed a contentment, as if a, soft Winde stirring the sweete Flowers, should, thereby infuse delight to our Senses: wherevpon succeeded the effectes, a still Desire to be fedd with the Pleasure: and Pity challenging Mischance, which should hinder them from that walke. So *Trezoboro* was for a time graciously dismissed; and a Truce of fourteene dayes gaue them entercourse one to another: in which space, the assembly of *Estates* sate dayly to finish this strange building of Peace: As for the Souldiers, their conceites stretched no farther, then to woonder at the Story, to be moued with the miracle, to pittie *Trezoboras* youth and comlynnesse, to wish an attonement on all sides, and to returne with wealth, libertie and credit: at last, such was the apprehension of their

X x. present

Trebizond.

present state, and miracle disposing their humours to contrarieties, that *Kalucki* (after *Mengrelins* consented to readmitte those *Trebizondians*, that would returne to former libertie and estates, or like recompence) sent *Misogambus* and *Olippo* with presents of ratification, who with sound of Trumpet in both the Armies proclaimed an inuiolate Truce: whereupon a stately *Colosseum* of brasse was erected betweene the Armies, insculped with the whole occurrents, as they chanced in order, to which bargaine of felicity *Balintasa* and *Arcabella* set their seales: the one, thanking the Gods for the advancement of her Children: the other, sacrificing to Fortune, that had so many waies encreased her happynesse. Thus doe the brothers to the great applause of the people, greet one another, and the state of the Spectacle would make a vollume in the description: but time must determine all thinges, and these great Armies be deu-
 uid: so *Kalucki* with treasure, Honor, and reuerence returned to the magnanimous *Mullumalla*, to whom he made an offortory of himselfe and ritches, and *Mengrelins* with peace, libertie, and delight, was welcomed to *Trebizond*; where prosperitie seemed for the time, to keepe her mansion, had not the wrathfull *Nemesis* (who neuer leaueth wrong and iniustice unpunished) sent for Ielositie and Suspition to attend on her in the progresse of visiting *Mengrelins*, least the will of the Gods should prooue a mockery, and the ineuitable de-
 crees

Trebizond.

crees of *Destinie* be not accounted of: and thus she meanes to contriue her entertainment.

NO sooner was the *Trebizondian* Armie dissolved, but *Trezoboro* solemnly proclaimed the Prince of peace, as well to celebrate their late quietnesse, as to practise Marriall exploytes, went about some fruites of idlenesse with glorious shoes to the people, and many Triumphes to the Court: whereby he made way to the peoples loue to come in at, and euery mans eyes were fixed vpon his youth and comlineesse: as you see some forren Plant gracing a curious Garden, and the commers in regarding the rest to no purpose: this was despihtfully pried into by some hatefull polliciceans, that terrefied the Emperor with blasfoning his sonns demeanor, which might winn the hearts of the kingome from him: to these certaine old Councillers, rather stomaching to see their impatience & peremptornesse abhorred, then daring to set a foote Broyles and discensions, added the greatnesse of the charge (considering the Treasure was much wasted with their last businesse) the disorders of idle attendants, the pride of his followers, the slendernesse of the present Court, all which set his thoughts at randome, & some of them stumbled on the wrested interpretations of the prophesie, which *Mengrelins* (fearing most the blow, that came last) absolutely beleueed, began to draw neerer and neerer to the full effect,

Trebizond.

and so began a strange manner of Melancholy, sequestering him selfe from conuersation; and when necessitie compelled him abroad, hee grew impatient and irregular: but the greatest cause of his disquiet, accrewed from the suggestion of diuers, who through the credite of *Belgorundo*, made euery paltry appearance of a litle skill to carry the true countenance of Learning and Diuination, by putting in practise the *Cabalisticall Art*, *Egyptian Characters*, *Astronomical Figures*, *Hieroglyphicall representations*, *Augurings*, and *Pithomical Incantations*; which with some slender likelihood were intermixed: so that the Court swarmed with a troope of diuelish *Astronomers* (a kind of people alwayes forbidden, and alwayes retained) whose strange Attire and Demeanour, gaue occasion of laughter and astonishment: the people counting them wise and extraordinary; the better sort deriding them, as buffonns and deceiuers.

With such illusions was *Mengrelins* quite caried from him selfe, and on a sodaine consented to a decree, that none (of what estate soeuer) should intermeddle with the *Emperors* retyering, nor appoynt extraordinary meetings without the verge of the Court, which was strangely taken at the first: but *Trezoboro* discovering the secret, was contented to repaire to the Pallace; which his presence quickly filled with entercourse of people, and the applause range by the *Emperors* cares; who in short time misliked it farre worse then the other, as almost by

eye-

Trebizond.

eye-witnesse perceiuing, he meant to insinuate into the vulgar opinion to irritate a faction: From hence a plaine displeasure arose by commanding the *Prince* to depart the Court: then wrought his absence beliefe of euery thing reported; and added withall, that the opportunitie made him study on the disgrace, and so prepare the reuenge; (For indeed there wanted not those, which proposed to *Trezoboro* his Fathers cruelty at the beginning, his wretched hate now, the errours of many men about him; and that there was no reason he should permit the indignitie: but these he suffered as Spiders in an house seruing to gather the Poyson and Venome of the Ayre, that the rest may be more sweete and holosome:) till at last, a wretched surmise displaid the ensignes of hate against him; which was too true, by reason all his fauourites and attendants were remooued, or neglected. *Calisthenes* aman of an high lineage, and dilicat witte, which by some extraordinary pleasantnes got the name of Good conceit; and yet till now made gracious with the *Empresse*, was checked with the tearme of *mimus* for slender glauncing at the *Emperors* melancholy. Another demanding but the cause of the *Princes* sequestration, was imprisoned. A third, making a *Satiricall* Inuention against especial persons, was publickly whipt. A fourth, saying, the *Prince* was more worthy submitted to the execution of a seuerer Iudgement: which made a great alteration; and to be plaine, slacked the reu-

X x 3

rence

Trebizond.

rence and dutie euer borne toward him.

Thus remained all places full of rumours, wherein confusion spread many dispositions abroad: some saying the *Emperor* was ill directed, or worse inclined: some that the Prince was causelessly wronged: some layed the fault on priuate persons, who hauing a long time swaied the Common-wealth, feared least the quicke conceite of others would detect their ill gouernment, and therefore went vnder publike pretences to preuent priuate mischeifes: some blamed the *Emperors* credulitie of the loosening sort of Magy: some affirmed he was quite distracted, and some dared exclaime, that fearing he knew not what, he would ruine the Common-wealth, and Butcher vp his Children, as he had done before: These speeches had diuers effects both with *Mengrelins* and *Trezoboro*, the father assuring it a practise of defamation, and the sonne suspecting his fathers crueltie; which was the more greuous vnto him, because he had deserued so well: so that now to secure himselfe he was enforced to stand on his Guard, and that incited the *Emperor* to proclaime him Traitor, the seueritie of which edict deuided the kingdom, and an vnnatural Ciuell warre ensued, wherein many stratagems and Turmoyles dislocated the Pillars & stayes of the *Empire*: for *Mengrelins* with his yecres grew wilfull, irregular, and dangerous, mistrusting his most trusty Seruants; and when any dared to request a Pacification,

Trezoboro
in Armes &
proclaimed
Traytor.

Trebizond.

on, he would not abide it. His Mother and Wife were ircksome, and all things at home framed them selues to the vnframing his quiet. Abroad he was sure the Cities would regard their preservation to come. The discontented persons would adhere to his Sonne, as well to auoyde the Lawes penall against them, as in hope of recompence and reward. The Noble men and Gentry, by reason of former neglect, would questionlesse make them selues acceptable to the Prince. Some yet aduanced, would not degenerate: and others in Office or Account, for their own safeties would continue allegiance: with these, & such, whom the very name of *Emperor* mustred vp, he made an ouer-maistring party, and in his owne person performing actions beyond expectation, strengthened the opinion of such, as stood wauering betwixt duty and pittie.

But when *Trezoboro* perceiued, that hee which standeth onely on defence, is farre from Victorie, hee then shewed his Father the force of a mighty Arme; with which he held out a long time: but at last, was compelled to retire to *Pelagium*, a place designed him for his Estate, and conuenient for Victualing and relieuing his Arme. Hither did *Mengrelins* prosecute him, and *Trezoboro*'s flight somewhat ouerswayed the common opinion, neuer certaine, but in vncertainties; so that the *Emperor* seemed cheared with his good proceedings, & his Sonnes tryall; whereupon somewhat cunningly thinking to presse the Enemy, while they were yeelding

Trebizond.

yeelding, hee proclaymed Pardon to all those, which would forsake the Prince: the rest he denounced guiltie of the Crime of *Maiestie*: Then seemed he to dally with cruelty, promising one hundred Tallents to any would bring him in dead or a liue: and last of all, encountred with his forces to great aduantage, which *Trezoboro* perceiuing would in time worke him out, and that his retardance gaue libertie for a *Russian* Armie to helpe his father, he dispatched a messenger to *Anzitemus*, and an other to *Opacus* of *Capadocia*, who by reason of the *Emperors* ielosie and stomach against them, as the causes of his feare, were not vsed, nor sent vnto in their late troubles, and therefore conceiuing they were neglected or despised, a displeasure arose against *Mengrelins*, and this opportunitie made them the willinger to ioyne with the Prince: especially *Anzitemus*, who with foure legions of old soldiers came in person to his ayde: as for *Opacus*, from *Phrigia*, *Lidia*, and his owne kingdom, he made an Armie of one hundred 20, Thousand, and gaue the Honor of their conduct to *Delano* a man of experience, great yeeres, and well beloued, yet suppressed from aduancement, by reason *Cuprax* the sonne of the Duke of *Pantalia*, seemed a favorite in Courte, and would haue drawne the managing of Martiall affayres to him selfe, had not *Trezoboro* by name entreated for *Delano*, and the Soldiers compelled out of their Country disclaimed any other.

But

Trebizond.

But when *Mengrelins* vnderstood, that *Anzitemus* was come himselfe, a sodaine trembling disproportioned his former Courage, and the Oracle (like a hellish vision appearing) mightely perplexed him, and was indeed the author of strange courses, which at last ouerturned his good successe, yet he went orderly to worke, and encountred with the *Armenians*, before they were vnited to his sonns forces, who had much a doe to make their passage by reason the Boates were not yet come from *Trezoboro*, and *Anzitemus* had *Anzitemus* commaunded, that no man should lay violent ioyne with *Trezoboro*: hands on the Emperor, but this interception ended with the name of a skirmish: For *Anzitemus* killet *Mengrelins* with *Delanos* assistance quickly passed their Armie by a Bridge made of the Boates: and helped let the *Prophetie*, & inuene the *Trezoboro* Emperor with great Furre-trees keeping equall distances of Twentie foote, and although the water was very broad; yet industry with the conueniencie of the place for woode, layed Plankes vpon the Beames, and so in one day both Horse and foote passed ouer in a manner within sight of the Enemie: For some two mile from the Riuer they had so entrencht the passages, that *Mengrelins* supposed they ment their to haue encamped, little thinking *Delano* played the Lapwing, who cryeth farthest from his Nest: and when he seemed most busie to fortifie a place of securitie, the maine Armie marched that night vnder a Woodes side to the Ri-

Y y.

uer,

Trebizond.

uer, and the next day put ouer, while the *Trebizondians* prepared against the Campe, which they supposed was so neere them: But being thus disappointed, they had liberty to complaine, but small meanes of reuenge, onely the *Emperour* vnited his Forces againe, and assured he was better prouided, determined to dally no longer, but put it to a triall; wherein if Fortune sayled, he was certaine to weaken the Aduersarie, and renew his owne Armie at pleasures and so one day might afford, what another did deny.

By this time is *Anzitemus* and *Delano* welcomed by the *Prince*, who hoping by course of pacification to end the Warre, sent to *Mengrelins* by faire intreaty not to conceiue so hardly of so worthy a sonne, and they would engage their Honor, he intended nothing but fayth and dutie: this message wrought no otherwise, then if *Trezoboro* would absolutely committe himselfe to his fathers tuition without hostage or other couenant, it might be the *Emperour* would forgiue him, to this *Anzitemus* opposed, yeelding many reasons, and by a second treatie urged the burying vnder foote of all displeasures, the remission and restoring his followers, and the confirming him Heire apparant. Heere againe *Mengrelins* disdained to be abridged of his will, or courbed by his sonne & subjects, whereupon defiance was proclaimed on all sides, and a day appoynted to entertaine destruction with solemnitie: at which time *Anzitemus* tryed another way to appease these mischeefes, by summoning

Trebizond.

moning the Armies to audience, and the *Emperour* to vnderstand, what must be trusted vnto. To this, the feare of the Souldiers, rather then his owne willingnesse, compelled him: and so *Anzitemus* in the front of his Armie thus deliuered his minde.

I am not ignorant (great *Emperour*, and misled people) that Wisdome and good Counsaile are sometimes vnseasonable, especially in a time of fury & hate amongst men of Warre, commaunded and countenanced by the Kings owne person; yet haue you no such cause either to put in armes these men, or Armed to make them butcher them selues: For though the Father fight there, the Sonne is not absent heere: though the elder Brother vnderstanding not the truth, is with *Mengrelins*, the younger attendes on *Trezoboro*: And though a Friend is enrouled with you, one of the Family is amongst vs: and were not this lamentable, though necessitie compelled it? But now to proceed with out order, ground, or reason, what scandall can be more opprobrious? What cause more detestable? All men haue written, that Violence continues not: yet haue you begun in the Cradle, and are not appeased after many yeares: and why? the *Emperour* is terrefied with an Oracle, and suspects his owne Children. Hath the Gods preserued them for this? Hath his Towardlinesse deserved this? Hath his Valloure in your late Broyles been shewed for this? Hath his Life been so often hazarded for this? Hath your Peace been wrought for this? Hath

Y y 2

your

Trebizond.

" your Prosperitie followed for this? Yea, hath Stran-
 " gers been ashamed of the Composition; and the
 " mighty *Kalucki* receiued him to fauour for this?
 " And will now the Common-wealth teare her
 " owne Bowels? the Members seeke their owne de-
 " struction by despising the Head; and the Father
 " murder his owne Child? It is execrable and ab-
 " hominable. But touching the Prophecie, to be-
 " lieue it not, what needeth this feare? To beleeue
 " it, what way of preuention? But you will say, it is
 " ambiguous. I reply, Malice must not misconstrue,
 " nor Wisdome be ouerruled with Supposes. For
 " concerning the *Prince*, (by the Deuine power
 " which ruleth all Princes) you can alleadge neither
 " cause, reason, nor likelihood. How then haue you
 " wronged your Renowne, and inforced their
 " Obedience? else would they neuer consent to de-
 " stroy one another, to ruine their Countrey, make
 " haucke of their owne increase, see & suffer mis-
 " chiefe to knocke at their doores; and with the Gi-
 " ants fight against Heauen: or like that vnnaturall
 " Bird, deuouring them that hatcheth her; seeke to
 " destroy the Successor, on whose safetie dependeth
 " all their liues. Leau off therefore for shame: leau
 " off; either yeeld a reason of your actions, or desist
 " from your vnreasonablenesse? But you will an-
 " swere, It is sufficient the *Emperour* commaundes.
 " I doe say no; hee is but the Steward of the Gods,
 " subiect to account; and ordained to forme, not dis-
 " solve the Common-wealth.

But

Trebizond.

But as a further vehemencie might haue agraua-
 ted the matter, the Souldiers began to repine, some
 demanding whether the *Prince* raysed the Warre,
 or desired to saue him selfe? Some for what cause
Mengrelus prosecuted his Sonne? Some stomach-
 ed to see intestine Dissipation. Some hardly belee-
 ued the *Prince* began Innouation, considering he
 was to expect the Kingdomes to flourish hereafter.
 Some said, though the *Emperor* were offended, the
 submission of a Sonne might appease any Father.
 Some absolutely denied to destroy the *Prince*, and
 the rest liked not, a wise man to be caryed away
 with dreames or deuises, especially when the ru-
 ine of the *Empire* must succeed: but *Mengrelus*
 enraged with this diuision exclaimed only on durie
 and allegiance threatening the reuolters with death,
 and attempting with stripes to terrefie diuers in
 the speed of escape, but it smally preuailed. For
 the greatest part fled a fore his face to his Sonne,
 which *Anzitemus* took the aduantage of and
 encountered with the rest in sollemne manner of
 hostilitie, so that a terrible fight began, and a lit-
 tle time overlooked a dangerous conflict: in
 which the victory was a mournfull Triumph:
 For it ended with the cries and teares of *Orpha-
 nes* for their Fathers, Fathers for their Children,
 Brother for Brother, one Kinsman for another,
 and freend for freend: yea such was the misery and
 mischeife of the error amongst them, that a sonne
 was found mourning ouer a Carkasse, whom he

Y y 3.

had

Trebizond.

had slaine, and perceiuing it his owne father after a ruthfull complaint, kild himselfe: the horror of which sight, daunted the stoutest courage, and made them all cry out vpon the cause of their troubles; which *Anzitemus* tooke hold of, and knowing the Emperor had escaped (and as he afterward learnt) to *Samarbando* with a quiet demeanor recalled them together, and though the Skirmish and their owne feares had disperced them farre off yet handled he the matter so well, that they were contented to returne; and finding *Trezoboro* as sad for their griefes, as his owne misfortune, which by his Honorable protestations in the necessitie to saue his life, and ynwillingnesse to disquiet so good subiects, they saw apparant, in so much that ynkind teares brake off the Princely discourse: they shouted for ioy, and with a new Comickall applaue sware, they would obey no other Emperor then *Trezoboro*: as for *Mengrelus* seeing his ill disposition had taught him the way to Tyranie, they sawe no reason to betray vertue, or be in subiection any longer to inhumanitie. Surely sayed *Anzitemus*, the Gods haue taken compassion vpon you, and you and we will now be one body, but of necessitie the body must haue a head, or else the Members perish, therefore we will inuest *Trezoboro* your Emperor, and he shall renew your peace and comforts: This (as according to their owne desires) they soone consented to, and so in midst of all the Armie was he aduanced, inuested, and solemnly proclaymed

Trebizond.

proclaymed *Emperor* of *Trebizond*, and all the *Mengrelus* Kingdomes adioyning; *Prince of Peace*, *Lord of* ^{deposed and} *the great Sea*, and *Servant* to the high Gods. Then *Trezoboro* ^{thofor Em.} sange they a Himne in his honour to *Bellona*, and a Song to *Diana*: And lastly, with *Panegyricall* Ceremonies, they brought him to *Mengrelus* royall Tent, which the Souldiers had reuerently preserved in the defeat.

But when vnfortunate *Peristoll* (whom for his ill newes he commaunded to be slaine) had enforced the proceedings of the Campe, and that the Prince had taken vpon him the Diademne, neuer was impatience apter to be described: For now he raged indeed, and put in practise many actions of distemperature, as assuring him selfe the Oracle was compleat; onely the last poynt (which was his death) yeelded more terrour in the suspition, then a thousand mischiefes in full execution: Yet he lifted vp once againe the countenance of Valoure, and with his supply out of *Russia*, many Mercenaries from *Scythia* and *Europa*, and the rest, (worthy to be beloued for being true to their Master,) hee set forward a mightier Armie then the first; which in short time confronted his Aduersaries, who were comming forward apace to take possession of the Citties: So that nothing was to be expected, but forcible and confused Prophana- tion both of loue and dutie; wherefore they gaue Reuenge full scope to make one day of death for all: And the Battaille began with a horrible and impetuous

Trebizond.

352

impetuous violence, wherein to see the dis-
temper'd *Mengrelus* with a well graced fury whirling
amongst the troupes, would haue pittied his dege-
nerating humors, and admired his strength and
valoure; but *Trezoboros* approache deuided
these thoughts, who finding the *Emperour* en-
closed to his great danger contrary to expectation,
commaunded them to desist, and so yeelded him
freedome to worke his madnesse on some other
subject. An other time *Anzitemus* chaunced
where destruction indeed was coming apace,
and deliuered him: which hee tooke in greater
scorne, because the Souldiers cryed, See the kind-
nesse of *Trezoboro*: see the pietie of *Anzitemus*.
But this I say caried him to disdain indeed; and
perceiuing him selfe spared by speciall appoynt-
ment, hee changed his Horse and Armour, com-
ming into the Battaile vnknowne, (For by this
time, neither Order nor Discipline seru'd) and
determined to single out his Sonne, with such a
minde, as a man after a solemn Vow, which he is
resolued to keepe, endeuoreth to bring to effect.
But *Anzitemus* (hauing scene *Perneades* sequester
him selfe from the company, with purpose to draw
foorth such men as he prouided in ambush) suppo-
sed the *Emperour* had been hee, and so encountred
with him before the sodaine approach might strike
a feare amongst the wearied, and already fainting
troopes; and after a gallant Battaile, Death rushed
in with a blow, which the King with both his hands
stroke

Trebizond.

353

stroke at his head, whose steely Couert not firmly
setled, yeelded to the violence; shewing that nothing
in the world is permanent, nor any man in life secure:
so the *Emperour* shrunk vnder the burden of this
misfortune, & yeelded to an honorable vntimelines:
which was the more lamentable, because hee sought
the destruction of his Sonne, and came to a ruthfull
end by his Daughters husband.

Mengrelus
slaine, and
the Prophecie
fulfilled.

But when *Anzitemus* had time to ouerlook, and
know it was *Mengrelus*, vnkinde remembrance con-
founded him with sorrow at the accident, and cursed
the hand, that yet pleaded ignorance in the deed; re-
mayning confounded, vntill the rumour and enter-
course of people brought *Trezoboro* thither: at last
came *Calisthenes*, *Orchanes*, *Hardubax*: at last came
the rest; all more troubled with griefe, then proud of
their owne quietnesse: so that the Victorie represen-
ted variety of Discomfort, rather then solemnity of a
Triumph: For what with recording those many Ver-
tues abounding in him, whereof euery one had boun-
tifully participated; and the present spectacle so full of
remorse, they sorrowed beyond measure, and *Trezo-
boro* was compelled to make his entrance into the *Em-
pire* with incongruent demeanour, & had celebrated
(if the State would haue permitted it) with one solemn-
ity his fathers Exequies, and his owne Coronation.
By this time, was the Oracle published abroad, & wise-
dome interdicted an vnmeasurable discomfort in a
matter remedles, & appoynted ineuitable: so to make
a new account with delight, *Anzitemus* was impor-
tuned to send for *Brizaca*, least she were altogether
deprined

Trebizond.

deprived of that benefite, (which Children receive from the knowledge of their Parents.) This asked a litle time of deliberation : but the importunities of the *Empresses* prevailed; so the charge of the Iorney was committed to *Philtranus* Prince of *Cilicia* : As for the Army, he devided that into two parts, sending the one by land vnder the command of *Kazopletus*; the other by Sea with *Pelorus* sonne of *Pelorus*, *Artabazes* Admirall: both to remaine vndissolued, till hee him selfe returned ; in the meane while, his Mother *Euphania* to rest *Regent* by a new Commission.

These matters had the effect of diligence and loyalty, & *Philtranus* came fortunately in to *Armenia*, & informed the *Queene* of all occurrents, with the plausible directions for her progresse to *Trebizond*. Heere the intermixture of contraries, kept her from the full entertainment of ioy ; so that her Fathers *Catastrophe* extinguished the delight of her Brothers advancement: to which an other home mischiefe was added, the returne of *Cleonidas*, who presuming on the absence of *Anzitemus*, and the Naue vnder *Pelorus*, entered the Confines of *Armenia*, and attempted a ridiculous Innovation. But before we certifie this Adventure, let vs see, how Fortune overlooked him in the danger after the Sea-fight with *Anzitemus*.

The story of **B**Y that time, *Cleonidas* and *Anzitemus* (through the effect of his diuelish reuenge) were devided, and their Ships burnt and dismembred, the horrible lamentation of so many men so many wayes yeelding vp the last powers of their soules, stroke

Trebizond.

stroke him to the heart, and (because his pestilent humour had no subiect to worke vpon) it boyled within him like a Furnace, overheating all the partes of his body and minde, so that he could haue been contented to haue made his owne seperation, considering a guilty Conscience laide open the records of so many faults : But euen when Death had been most beneficiall, the necessitie of Life, with the kindnesse of the impartiall element, draue the vnfirm Seare wheron he fate to another peece of a Shippe, from whence ouerburdned, hee saw fourteene cast into the Sea, as supposing it the nearest way to Heauen, through the reflexion the Heauens made in the Water: On this by great chaunce he got, and was tossed too and fro with the Billowes, as if Destruction meant to make a Game of his danger: at last after two dayes, hee was driuen on a sandie Iland not farre from the Continent of *Persia*; wherein he mused at his owne ignorance, that hauing so long time scowred all the coast of the *Hircanian* Sea, hee was yet vnacquainted with this place.

Heere a very instinct of Nature put him to his shifts, and by striking two Flintes on certaine Reeds lying in the place, he shuffled vp a Fire; whose effects made the returne of warmth and strength, the maintainers of life: at which the inhabitants (who were onely Seruants and Officers attending on the Priests heere living) wondred, who had presumed without order of Ceremony, to dishonour the place: For this was called the *Iland of Fire*, and had two Chappels therein; one dedicated to *Vulcano*, the other to the

Sunne; in which after the *Persian* manner, the *Priestes* were appoynted to liue, who onely had power to giue leaue to the Inhabitants to make their Fiers for necessities sake; which yet was not done without presence of a Religious man: Wherevpon they apprehended *Cleonidas*, and brought him to *Sicambus* the *Archpriest* in the same manner they found him: But when with an extraordinary courage in the *Sirian* language (because hee was to speake to a man of his profession) he discovered him selfe, and that *Sicambus* vnuailed his ignorance, remembring hee had seene him with *Astages* in *Persia*, & by many meanes heard of his fame, he comforted him the best hee could; but the best he could, preuented not a strange Sicknesse, which with an vnkind detention kept him full two yeares retiered, and confirmed their opinion, which supposed him perished: in the end, the firmenesse of his compleat manhood, and well seasoned body, overmaistred the tyranny, and he recovered both in health and reformation: for after his penitency had protested a remorse of the action against *Artabazes*, and abiured his ill manner of life; the religious Father cheared him with the comfort, which followes true repentance, and by examples confirmed his willingness to amendment. Vpon this, they appoynted to goe into *Persia*, and accordingly arriued at *Suziana* much about the time *Anzitemus* fortunes were published through *Asia*; which he rather woondred, then stomaked at, not doubting to make his peace and reconciliation, which his hope supposed by *Zaleppos* meanes (when the *Persian* Embassadors went to *Armenia*)

menia) to bring to passe: But their returne certified *Anzitemus* slight answere in that behalfe, and hee smothered the indignation for a time; but vnable to suppress it, gaue Libertie at last, to burst forth into flames of Despight, and in this manner proceeded.

Certaine summes of Mony disbursed for *Astages*, he demaunded of the Queene *Roxana*: which awhile bred scruple and doubt, by reason of their Articles with *Anzitemus* and *Artabanus*; yet after a little debating, they were repayed with a plenary cancelling of all accounts: For being a matter chancing before this new Contract, and in her Fathers behalfe, shee thought it dishonorable to trifle him out with deuises or excuses. Many of his Souldiers settled in their Townes, which the hast of his busines permitted not to carry with him, he requested againe: This was left to their owne desires, because in this space married, and brought vp amongst them, they would not seeme to banish them by compulsion: So the most of them louing Spoyles better then Pay, hastened to *Cleonidas*. With this Mony and this Supply, he departed to his owne *Iland*, and gathering his Friends and Confederats together, with fourty sayle of well appointed Ships, and fiftie Hulks for the transportation of his Army, he took the aduantage of the Kings absence in the *Trebizondian* Warres, and made speed for *Armenia*, landing his Forces at such time, as *Kazopletus* and *Pelorus* were returned from *Anzitemus*; and *Philtranus* came with directions to attende the Queene *Brisaca* to her Mother. But this they were ignorant of, and diuers vnsettled Humors, as idle per-

Trebizond.

sons, and endangered to the Law, vpon the rumour of *Cleonidas* ariual, to the number of foureteene thousand, made a head in nature of *Particeans*, and certifie, they were ready, and resolu'd to ioyne with him; for their hearts and discontentments, had engaged them already; as if they meant to giue this notice, that in the best Hue there be Drones and robbers of them that labour: but as their willingnes set them forward, their forwardnes puld them backe, as disorder'd without a Head, and hauing bad intelligence: For the vnlookt for comming of *Kazopletus* ouertooke them with that speed, that *Cleonidas* had scarce notice, before the distraction disperfed and Iustice quickly scourged them all.

Thus was this fanaticall Company discomfited, and *Cleonidas* in a manner as soone ouerthrowne: For vpon report, how Mischance had put on a double visage against him, he made a rerreat to his Ships; but ere he could house his men, *Kazopletus* by land, and *Pelorus* by Sea, had so hemd him in, that though it prooued a gallant and tedious Skirmish, full of obseruation and example; yet his Fleete was suncke and dissipated, his Companies quite defeated, and him selfe taken prisoner, and sent to *Sagarena*, where *Brizaca* kept her Court; but shee vnwilling to proceed against him without directions from *Anzitemus*, by the counsaile of *Euphania*, committed him to Ward in the same place, where his Father had once besiedged the beautilous *Artaxata*.

When *Cleonidas* saw him selfe thus disappoynted and captiu'd, and that the last Acte of his Tragedy was in

Trebizond.

in hand, to which the Gates of Shame and Death; or Death with the shame stood onely open, hee made it a matter of some repining: yet as a man of excellent Resolution, hee neither seemed much dismayed, or abated: For to complaine of Godes, or Men, of Fortune, or the World, he thought it a property of such, as desired to liue. Againe, to craue pardone, sue to Friends, and make base Submission, hee imputed to such as feared to die; so that Death appeared now like a welcome friend, if the reproch might be taken away, which made such an impressiō, that he protested *Anzitemus* should not triumph in his disgrace, nor vse his liuing body contumelously: yet when there seemed want of meanes to effect this glorious Acte (as hee supposed) beeing left destitute of all prouision, hee then boyled for very rage, and was enforced to coole him selfe with a Cup of cold Water; which working a better temperature, somewhat reduced him, and then he reprehended his dulnesse, that conceiued not the infinite wayes, whereat Death might make her entrance; wherevpon with circumspection (as if Desperatnesse meant to intreat her contrary aduise) hee searched about the Chamber, at last finding a ryfing in the Wall, where a Flint shoued out his Corner, with a maine careere he dashed out his braines, leauing rather example of Manhod, then Conscience. *The death of Cleonidas.*

With the death of *Cleonidas*, remayned *Armenia* fully quieted, and *Brizaca* without further suspition, might prepare for her progresse; to which the induitry of *Philranus*, and the dutie of her Subiectes added

Trevizond.

added outward Ritches and Pompe; nor was shee behinde them for State and Maiestie: So that shee set forward to their Ioy and Amazement from whence shee came, & to their Delight & Contentment, to whom shee went. But when *Azitemus* vnderstood of *Cleonidas* death, hee tooke the newes (as it were in ill part,) because hee thought him selfe disappointed of a great deale of Honour in the courses meant toward him: yet ballansing the assurance of his owne Peace and quietnes withall, hee gaue way to more seasonable desires, and seemed satisfied with the wantonnesse of the time, and the pleasure of the place, which delighted with varietie: so that if his owne importunities had not compelled his returne into *Armenia*, hee might very easily haue vsurped the felicitie of another Kingdome.

FINIS.

Scribimus indocti, doctiq; Poemata passim.